

PART I
ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY IN USE

1. THE ENGLISH VERB

1.1. THE PRESENT SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) AND THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE-FORMS

A. The Present Simple (Indefinite) Tense

FORMATION

Table 1

| Affirmative | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|----------|------------|---------------|-------------------|--------------|
| I you | work go | I you | do not | work go | do | I you | work? go? |
| he she it | works goes | he she it | does not | | does | he she it | |
| we you they | work | we you they | do not | | do | we you they | |

Contractions:

don't = do not doesn't = does not

* The rules of the verb tenses formation and usage in 1.1-1.7. refer to the Active Voice.

As is seen from the table above the Present Simple (Indefinite) in affirmative sentences coincides in form with the Infinitive without the particle *to* except the 3rd person singular when the ending *s (-es)* is added to the verb.

I work - he works; you play - she plays;

we finish - it finishes; I cry - she cries The ending *-s/-es* has three variants of pronunciation: [s], [z], [ɪz]. (See the table below).

Table 2

| [s] after voiceless consonants | [ɪz] after voiced consonants and vowels | [ɪz] after |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| puts writes sits | reads buys gives | changes dresses marches |

In interrogative and negative sentences the Present Simple tense takes the auxiliary *do* or *does* (for the 3rd person singular) with the exception of the verb *to be* which does not need an auxiliary.

When does he usually do his homework?

What do you do for a living?

I don't feel like going out tonight.

Why are you so angry with him?

He is not in. He is out.

USAGE

The Present Simple (Indefinite) tense denotes:

1. Habitual facts or repeated actions, which are normally indicated by adverbials of frequency such as *often, always, usually, seldom, rarely, sometimes, never, generally, as a rule, every day (month), every other day (week, month, etc.), once a week, etc.*

He often works till midnight.

My brother plays tennis every other day.

Are you never late for classes?

Do you generally speak English in class?

2. Universal truths (laws of nature) and permanent characteristics, situations or states.

The sun sets in the west. She teaches English at school. Do you like rainy weather? His parents live in London.

3. Present actions and states, going on at the moment of speech with the so-called stative* verbs which include

a) verbs of sense perception: *see, hear, notice, taste, smell, etc.*

It smells like a hospital in here.

The meat tastes spicy.

I don't see anyone in the room. Where are they all?

b) verbs of mental activity: *understand, think, believe, remember, know, forget, mean, suppose, recognize, etc.*

Do you recognize me? What does he mean?

Who do you think will win the game? Do you know what he is speaking about?

c) verbs of feeling and emotions: *like, dislike, hate, love, wish, want, prefer, care*, etc.

I prefer dogs to cats.

Which of these dresses do you like best?

About the possibility of using the Present Continuous with some of the stative verbs see Part B of this Unit.

Do you want anything to drink? - I want a glass of juice, please.

Jill really hates house work.

d) verbs of possession: *have, belong, own, possess*, etc. *Who does this car belong to? They have a big new house.*

4. Future actions

a) in subordinate clauses of time and condition after the conjunctions *when, after, before, as soon as, until, if, in case*, etc.

When the water boils I'll turn off the gas. I'll join you as soon as I get a note from you. You won't get slim if you eat too many sweets. I'll tell you a secret if you promise to keep it. b) for scheduled facts and events such as flights, train arrivals, departures, itineraries which are worked out officially and are certain to take place.

The flight leaves at 2 p.m. (according to the timetable)

You arrive at Basel at 6.30 a.m. local time, (according to the itinerary)

B. The Present Continuous (Progressive) Tense

FORMATION

The Present Continuous tense is formed with the help of the auxiliary *be* in the appropriate form and the Present Participle of the main verb.

Table 3

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------------|-----|---------|-------------------|---------|---------|---------------|-------------------|----------|
| I | am | working | I | am not | working | am | I | working? |
| YOU | are | | you | are not | | are | you | |
| he she it | is | | he she it | is not | | is | he she it | |
| we you they | are | | we you they | are not | | are | we you they | |

Contractions:

'm = am 're = are

's = is

aren't = are not isn't = is not

When *-ing* is added to a verb there may be some changes in spelling:

a) final *e* is omitted: *have - having; make - making*;

b) *ie* is replaced by *y*: *lie - lying; die - dying*;

c) the consonant following a short vowel is doubled: *put - putting; get - getting*.

USAGE

The Present Continuous tense denotes:

1. An action happening now. This may mean 'at the actual moment of speaking' or over a period of time including the moment of speaking.

We are packing the things now and the kids are playing in their room.

Peter is still sleeping. Don't wake him up.

It's raining all day.

It may also have a broader sense and mean 'about the moment of speaking'.

He is studying at Oxford. (Although he may be on vacation at the moment of speaking.) He's teaching French and learning Greek. (He may not be doing either at the moment of speaking.) The purpose of using the Present

Continuous tense for actions which do not coincide with the moment of speech is to show that they have a limited duration. In other words, they are *temporary, not permanent* actions. As is seen from the examples above the Present moment (both in the narrower and broader senses) is indicated by *time adverbials* such as *at the moment, now, at present, just now, right now*, etc. When the duration over a period of time is meant, *adverbials* like *all the morning, all day, the whole night, still*, etc are used.

2. Pre-arranged future actions, i.e. actions that have been planned or intended by the speaker*.

My father is leaving for Rome tonight. We are having a party on Saturday. Nick is running a marathon next week.

3. Actions of unusual frequency with adverbials of permanence and repetition such as *always, constantly*, etc. In

these cases the Present Continuous gives an utterance an emotional colouring, mainly of a negative kind: *irritation, annoyance, reproach*, etc.

You are always finding fault with me. Why are you complaining all the time?

* Compare with the Present Simple for future actions which is used in formal situations, when the action does not convey the speaker's plan.

Notice the difference in meaning:

She always worries about her children. (Present Simple with '*always*' is used to denote a regular habitual action.)

She is always worrying about trifles. (Present Continuous with '*always*' is used to express the speaker's irritation about smb's habit which he/she considers negative.)

Note that some of the stative verbs can be used in the Present Continuous form when the verb expresses **an activity (an event), not a state**.

| State | Activity |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| The soup smells delicious. | She is smelling the rose. |
| What do you think of the project? | What are you thinking about? |
| Kate looks wonderful today. | They are looking at the blackboard. |

Compare the use of the Present Continuous (Progressive) and the Present Simple (Indefinite) tense-forms.

1. What are you doing, Jane? Are you still looking for your gloves? You are always losing your things!
2. What does he do for a living? - He sings and plays the guitar.
3. I'm learning to drive a car. Next month I am getting my driving licence.
4. Tom drives very well. He is always very careful when driving.
5. We usually grow beans in our garden but this year we are not growing any.
6. Do you understand the problems they are discussing?
7. It is cold today. It is snowing all day. It often snows at this time of the year.
8. You will help us a lot if you continue your investigation.
9. Mike doesn't speak English, does he?
10. Listen to them! What language are they speaking?
- II. The Moon goes round the Earth.
12. The family are having lunch now.
13. How many meals a day do you usually have?
14. Don't worry. Father is coming back soon.
15. Skill comes with practice.

PRACTICE

1. Choose between the Present Simple (Indefinite) and Present Continuous (Progressive) tense-forms.

1. They usually *sit/are sitting* for hours without saying a word.
2. She *is keeping/keeps* her room tidy as a rule.
3. Don't ask me what spinach *is tasting/tastes* like. I've never tried it.
4. Ann *is applying/applies* this ointment every other day.
5. We *are seeing/see* each other only occasionally.
6. Next week we *sign/are signing* the contract.
7. Could you turn off the television? Nobody *watches/is watching* it now.
8. How do you *get/are you getting* to your office?
9. The water in this lake seldom *is freezing/freezes* in winter.
10. Water doesn't *exist/isn't existing* on the Moon.

2. Choose the appropriate adverbial of time.

1. Dave always stays at the office (*since/till*) six o'clock.
2. She makes strawberry jam (*every year/ recently*). -
3. It's freezing hard (*for a long time/now*).
4. People (*continually/traditionally*) prepare coloured eggs at Easter.
5. They are having some financial difficulties (*lately/now*).
6. I'm feeling rather run down (*recently/at present*), doctor.
7. Carol (*rarely/usually*) reads a lot and is extremely well-informed.
8. The company is looking for people with experience (*lately/now*).
9. I don't go swimming very much (*as a rule/now and again*).
10. The new school opens (*at once/next week*).
11. We are eating in the kitchen (*during/while*) this cold weather.
12. What do you usually do (*in the afternoon/this afternoon*)?
13. Mary is going to be a film star (*once/one day*).
14. More and more young people have careers (*nowadays/ recently*).

15. My father shaves (*in a day/every other day*).

3. Open the brackets using the Present Simple or the Present Continuous tense-forms.

1. Have you got a light? - Sorry, I (*not/smoke*).
2. My wife has never been to France. She (*plan*) to go there next summer.
3. Your car is so clean. How often you (*wash*) it?
4. Students often (*think*) that exams (*be*) a nuisance.
5. Peter seldom (*tell*) the truth. You can't believe everything he (*say*).
6. You (*understand*) what he (*talk*) about?
7. Nancy (*look*) like her father.
8. What you (*do*). - I'm an engineer.
9. The soup (*taste*) good.
10. Your brother (*be*) a student now? - Yes, he (*study*) at the University.
11. Ann (*play*) the piano better than Susan.
And who (*play*) now? - I (*think*) it (*be*) Susan.
12. What you (*do*) tomorrow evening? - I (*go*) to the theatre.
13. I usually (*not/have*) breakfast before I (*go*) to work.
14. She often (*take*) my dictionary but seldom (*remember*) to bring it back. If tomorrow she (*ask*) for the dictionary again, I shan't give it to her.
15. What a beautiful dress you (*wear*). 'When did you buy it?
16. He is a night watchman. He (*work*) at night and (*sleep*) in the daytime.
17. She (*be*) a dietician. She (*help*) people to choose the right food.
18. They (*say*) if you (*see*) a black cat, you (*not/liave*) good luck.
19. Jane (*be*) in Paris now. She (*learn*) French there.
20. If Peter (*continue*) to drive his car carelessly, he'll get into a traffic accident.
21. You (*hear*) this noise downstairs? What can it be?
22. Have you heard about Tom? He (*build*) a new house now.
23. You'll have to put on your rubber boots if it (*not/stop*) raining in a minute.
24. If I (*have*) some time in the evening, I'll repair your bicycle.
25. Excuse me, but you (*stand*) on my foot.
26. She (*give*) two concerts in London next week.
27. What time the children (*come*) out of school, as a rule?
28. Why you (*smell*) the meat? It (*not/be*) fresh?
29. She always (*let*) me down!
30. You (*believe*) in God?
31. You always (*complain*) about the weather!
32. Take the saucepan off the cooker! The water (*boil*).
33. I'm afraid you can't see my daughter at the moment. She (*have*) a music lesson. She always (*have*) it on Friday mornings.
34. She (*be*) still ill, but she (*get*) better now.
35. It often (*rain*) here at this time of the year?
36. Don't interrupt me while I (*talk*) to somebody else.
37. He's a doctor, but he (*not/practise*) at the moment.
38. What he (*do*)! - He (*try*) to get the car started.
39. In Britain most shops (*close*) at 5.30 p.m.
40. I'm sorry it's so noisy, but we (*move*) the furniture.
41. Where you (*come*) from? - I (*come*) from Russia.
42. Flowers always (*make*) a good present.
43. Alice never (*go*) to work by bus. She (*walk*) through the park, as a rule.
44. What he (*mean*) by saying this? It (*sound*) strange.
45. I (*write*) to my parents twice a month.
46. She always (*be late*) for classes!
47. I (*write*) this letter to you while the children (*play*) on the beach. Actually, they (*play*) here the whole day.
48. If we (*start*) at nine, we (*have*) plenty of time for the shops. We (*be*) free till half past four.
49. They always (*tell*) him everything. So I (*think*), he (*know*) about it already.
50. This carpet (*cost*) 30 dollars. Why not buy it?
51. He still (*try*) to find a job but there (*not/be*) much work available at present.
52. Believe me, I (*think*) of you all the time.
53. I (*not/know*) how they (*make*) both ends meet. They (*have*) six children and (*not/earn*) very much.
54. My mother (*think*) that hitch-hiking (*be*) dangerous.
55. The police (*look*) into the matter now.
56. People (*like*) stability in life.
57. They (*open*) a new McDonald's tomorrow.
58. The English (*believe*) that their home (*be*) their castle.

59. Mike (*arrive*) in three days. We can't wait until he (*come*). Everyone (*look forward*) to seeing him.
60. What a wonderful day we (*have*) today!
61. When he (*have*) a problem to solve he will work at it until he (*find*) an answer.
62. The equator (*run*) round the middle of the earth.
63. Jack and Helen (*live*) in the Hague. At the moment they (*travel*) round Britain.
64. When snakes (*lose*) their skins?
65. The English (*like*) coalfires even though they (*not/produce*) much heat.
66. My brother (*not/care*) very much what he (*look*) like.
67. She always (*lose*) her temper!
68. A hot-air balloon (*float*) because hot air (*be*) lighter than cool air. A hot air balloon (*consist*) of a basket in which the pilot and the crew (*stand*), a gas burner and a large balloon.
69. As soon as doctors (*find*) an answer to AIDS, they will be able to cure people.
70. You (*look*) great after your holiday! - Yes, I (*feel*) wonderful!
71. You can borrow my Walkman unless you (*lose*) it.
72. Have I told you about how Ann (*get on*) at college?
73. He (*be*) intelligent but he (*lack*) common sense.
74. The house (*be*) in good condition but it (*need*) to be repainted.
75. He (*waste*) his time looking for a job there, they (*not/ take*) any staff on now.
76. The man who (*live*) opposite us sometimes (*come*) over for a cup of coffee.
77. She (*dislike*) asking people for favours.
78. If I (*have*) a headache I generally (*take*) an aspirin.
79. In England it always (*rain*) and the wind constantly (*blow*)!
80. If you (*heat*) ice, it (*melt*).
81. Don't take the newspaper away! I still (*read*) it.
82. How I (*look*) in this dress? It (*suit*) me?
83. Much of eastern England (*have*) a soil that (*produce*) crops of a very high yield.
84. Let's sit for a while. My feet (*ache*) me.
85. I (*see*) no way of avoiding the problem.
86. At the moment the company (*reorganize*) its department.
87. The early bird (*catch*) the worm.
88. Scotland (*occupy*) the northern part of Great Britain, (*not/ do*) it?
89. Good news! Sue and Paul (*come*) to stay with us.
90. Can you close the window? It (*freeze*) in here.
91. My cousin (*attend*) a university in Midwest which (*specialize*) in astronomy.
92. Every time cigarettes (*go*) up in price, many people (*try*) to stop smoking.
93. The food that Mother (*cook*) in the kitchen (*smell*) delicious.
94. Whenever it (*rain*) very hard, the stream (*overflow*).
95. No wonder the house (*be*) so cold! You always (*leave*) the doors open!
96. The film (*be*) very confusing. You (*understand*) what (*go*) on?

1.2. THE PAST SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) AND THE PAST CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE-FORMS

A. The Past Simple (Indefinite) Tense

FORMATION

The Past Simple is formed by adding *-ed* to the stem for *regular verbs* and by changing the root vowel or in some other ways for *irregular verbs* which need to be memorized. The form of the Past Simple is the same for all persons.

Table 4

| Affirmative | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|--------|----------|---------|------|---------------|------|-------|
| I | | I | | | | I | |
| you | | you | | | | you | |
| he | worked | he | | work | | he | work? |
| she | | she | did not | | did | she | |
| it | came | it | | come | | it | come? |
| we | | we | | | | we | |
| you | | you | | | | you | |
| they | | they | | | | they | |

Contractions:

didn't = did not

When *-ed* is added there are sometimes changes in spelling, e.g. *stop - stopped, study - studied*. The ending *-ed* has variants of pronunciation depending on the type of a preceding sound:

| It] after voiceless consonants | Id] after voiced consonants and vowels | (id) after [t, d] |
|---|--|--|
| watched worked stopped | lived played used | studied mended rented |

USAGE

The Past Simple tense denotes:

1. A single action or a state. The reference of the action to the past is typically indicated by *time adverbials* such as *ago, last year (week, month), yesterday, the other day, in 1997, last (time), for five years, for a week, etc.*

Ann spent a lot of money on books yesterday. It didn't rain last night.

When did you go to the cinema last?

She started learning the piano at the age of five.

I baked the cake for 30 minutes.

Note that when an adverbial denoting a period of time (*for five years, for a few- minutes, etc*) is used with the Past Simple emphasis is placed on the reference of the fact to the past, not on the duration of the activity.

They lived in Brest for five years before the war.

2. A succession of single past actions.

/ entered the office, looked around and came up to the secretary.

3. Habitual past actions or states.

I often went cycling last summer.

When it is desired to emphasize a contrast between the past and the present the construction *used to + Infinitive** is preferable.

He used to smoke forty cigarettes a day till he finally gave up smoking.

Do you play golf? - No, but I used to when I lived in the country.

She used to be such a happy lively girl (but no longer now).

The construction *would + Infinitive* is also used to describe repeated past actions (but not states). It is more common for written language and often occurs in reminiscences.

* Note the difference in meaning between 'used to do smth' and *be (get) used to smth or doing smth*', e.g. *We used to go to the cinema a lot but we never get the time now. It's hard to understand Scottish people if you're not used to their accent. I'm not used to walking long distances.*

When we worked in the same office, we would have coffee together.

4. Reported present time actions after the reporting verbs like *say, tell, ask, wonder, etc* in the Past Simple (according to the rules of Sequence of Tenses).

| Direct Speech | Indirect (Reported) Speech |
|--|--|
| 1. Jane said to me: «I am never late for classes». 2. Ann asked me: « When do you usually have breakfast ? » | 1. Jane said me (that) she was never late for classes. 2. Ann wondered when I usually had breakfast. |

B. The Past Continuous (Progressive) Tense

FORMATION

The Past Continuous tense is formed with the help of *the auxiliary was/were* and *the Present Participle of the main verb*.

Table 5

| Affirmative | | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|------|---------|------|----------|---------|------|--------------------------------------|----------|--|
| I | was | working | I | was not | working | was | I | working? | |
| you | were | | you | were not | | were | you | | |
| he | was | | he | was not | | was | he she it we you they | | |
| she | | | she | | | | | | |
| it | | it | | | | | | | |
| we | were | | we | were not | | were | | | |
| you | | | you | | | | | | |
| they | | | they | | | | | | |

Contractions:

wasn't = was not weren't = were not

USAGE

The Past Continuous (Progressive) tense denotes:

1. An action in progress at a definite moment* or at a definite period of time in the past indicated normally by adverbial modifiers such as *at 5 p.m.*, *at that time yesterday*, *from 2 to 3*, *between three and four*, *all the morning*, *the whole day*, etc.

At one o'clock she was having lunch.

What were you doing yesterday at seven p.m.?

It was raining the whole morning.

The moment in the past can also be expressed by the context or by an adverbial clause of time.

I looked out of the window. The sun was shining

and the birds were singing.

When I came in he was lying in bed.

Obviously, the action of the subordinate clause of time in such cases is simultaneous with that of the principal clause. However, the two actions are not always identical in character. One can be an action in progress (i.e. *a long action*) while the other may be an event (i.e. *a short action*) which 'interrupts' the activity going on at the given past moment.

We were going down in the lift when it suddenly stopped.

* Similar to the meaning of 'now' in the Present Continuous tense, the definite moment in the past may actually mean both **at** and **around** a particular moment in the past. The meaning of the Past Continuous in the latter case is that of a temporary past activity contrasted to a permanent past activity expressed by the Past Simple Tense.

*// **happened** while I **was living** in Bristol. They **lived** in London all their life.*

There can be situations with two parallel past actions in progress, which are both expressed by the Past Continuous or by the Past Simple tenses, or there may be a combination of the Past Continuous and the Past Simple. The two simultaneous actions in progress are normally linked by 'while'.

Jane was cooking while I was laying the table. While we were packing (packed) the suitcases, Bill was talking (talked) to the travel agent.

Note that when the two actions are not simultaneous, i.e.

when one action happened after the other, the Past Simple

is used for both the verbs.

When Brenda arrived I was telephoning Jim. (She arrived during my telephone call.) When Brenda arrived I telephoned Jim. (I telephoned after her arrival.)

2. A past action of unusual frequency to convey a feeling of annoyance or irritation with adverbials of frequency like *always*, *constantly* (compare with a similar use of the Present Continuous).

When he studied at school he was always making trouble.

3. Present time actions in progress in reported speech after the reporting verbs like *say*, *tell*, *ask*, *wonder*, etc in the Past Simple (according to the rules of Sequence of Tenses).

| Direct Speech | Indirect (Reported) Speech |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Jim asked: «Is it freezing hard?»</i> 2. <i>Mike asked: «What are you cooking for dinner, mum?»</i> | 1. <i>Jim wondered if it was freezing hard.</i> 2. <i>Mike asked his mum what she was cooking for dinner.</i> |

Compare the use of the Past Simple (Indefinite) and the Past Continuous (Progressive) tense-forms.

1. *It was a cold winter night. It was snowing hard and I wanted to get back home quickly.*

2. Jack fell off the ladder when he was painting the ceiling.
3. Yesterday evening we waited for him in the office for nearly an hour. We gave up in the end and went home.
4. What were you doing on the corner last night around 9 o'clock? - I was waiting for a bus to go down town.
5. When I opened the envelope I was delighted to see a picture of my friend's family.
6. I dropped my bag when I was running for a bus. 7. Peter was wearing a white shirt and grey trousers when I saw him.

PRACTICE

1. Choose between the Past Simple and Past Continuous (Progressive) tense-forms.

Thomas Edison *started/was starting* work on the railway when he was twelve, selling newspapers and snacks. There were long periods with nothing for him to do so he *built/ was building* himself a little laboratory in the luggage van where he could carry out experiments when he didn't *sell/ wasn't selling* things to passengers. Another thing that he *occupied/was occupying* himself with was reading. Rejoined a library and *read/was reading* every single book in it. One day, when he *waited/was waiting* at a station he *noticed/was noticing* a small boy who *played/was playing* by the track, unaware that a train *approached/was approaching*. Edison *ran/was running* out and *grabbed/was grabbing* the child just in time. The child's father was so grateful that he *offered/ was offering* to teach Edison to be a telegraph operator. Edison accepted the offer and soon he *had/was having* regular lessons. After a year, he was good enough to get a job in the telegraph office. He continued to read and experiment, whenever he *had/was having* time. At twenty-one he *left/ was leaving* the telegraph office to devote all his time to be an inventor. He *went/was going* to invent the electric light bulb, the photograph and the movie camera.

2. Choose the suitable adverb.

1. Everyone was talking but stopped (*then/the moment*) Mr Smith entered the room.
2. I lived in Glasgow (*until/by the time*) I was fourteen.
3. (*While/Once*) I was chewing a piece of meat, my tooth fell out.
4. James always let me know (*at the time/whenever*) he was going to be late.
5. Now, Mr Star, what were you doing (*between/by*) ten and ten thirty last night?
6. It wasn't (*until/up to*) last year that they could afford to buy a car.
7. I was sitting at my report (*by 5p.m./at 5p.m.*).
8. (*When/While*) I got to the cinema Jack was waiting for me.
9. He was drinking quite a lot (*these days/those days*). 10. (*When/During*) I was shopping I met Max, my sister's boy-friend.

3. Open the brackets putting the verbs in the Past Simple or the Past Continuous tense-forms.

1. When the door-bell (*ring*) he (*stand*) up and (*go*) to the door.
2. It (*rain*) hard this morning when I (*wake up*).
3. While I (*have*) breakfast this morning, my sister (*phone*) from Mexico.
4. When I (*see*) his face, I (*realize*) my mistake.
5. I (*take*) my umbrella because it (*rain*).
6. Yesterday morning he (*wake up*) late and (*miss*) his breakfast.
7. When he (*work*) in the garden he (*hurt*) his knee.
8. Linda (*wait*) for the bus when I (*see*) her.
9. I (*look*) out of the window and (*see*) that it (*snow*) hard. 10. When the parents (*come*) from the theatre yesterday evening, the children (*sleep*). \ 1. When the guests (*arrive*) Mrs Black still (*cook*) dinner.
12. Tom (*not/want*) to lend us the money at first but then he (*agree*).
13. The illness (*get*) worse and worse. In the end he (*go*) into hospital for an operation.
14. I (*walk*) along the road yesterday when I (*meet*) an old friend. She (*go*) to the post-office.
15. We (*see*) an accident when we (*wait*) for the bus.
16. Where you (*go*) at this time yesterday?
17. I (*go*) to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and (*wake*) up an hour later at 4 o'clock.
18. He (*give*) up his job as a journalist and (*become*) a teacher.
19. While we (*be*) on holiday, we (*spend*) most of our time swimming and sailing.
20. When my car (*break*) down I (*phone*) a garage.
21. When I (*shave*) I (*cut*) myself.
22. Ann (*show*) me a photograph and then (*go*) to the kitchen for some drinks.
23. Sally (*lie*) in bed when her mother (*enter*) the room.
24. This (*use*) to be a station and all the London trains (*stop*) here. But two years ago they (*close*) the station and (*give*) us a bus service instead.
25. I (*go*) to Jack's house but (*not/find*) him in. His mother (*say*) that she (*not/know*) what he (*do*) but (*think*) he probably (*play*) football.
26. We (*cycle*) along the road when we (*see*) a huge lorry.
27. «What you (*do*) between 9.00 and 10.00 yesterday?» (*ask*) the detective. - «I (*clean*) my house», said Mrs Jones. «I always clean my house on Saturday mornings.»
28. Although he (*agree*) with me on most points, there (*remain*) one on which he was unwilling to yield.
29. We (*arrive*) as they (*leave*).
30. She (*weep*) bitterly while she (*tell*) her story.

31. As Mary (*get*) out of the boat her foot (*slip*) and she (*fall*) into the water.
32. While I (*wait*) for the bus I (*notice*) a group of tourists who (*listen*) intently to a guide.
33. I (*try*) to explain the situation to my parents, but they just (*not/understand*) what I (*talk*) about.
34. She (*injure*) her ankle while she (*jog*) in the park. 35. I (*feel*) rather worried. It (*get*) darker and colder, but there (*be*) still no sign of the rescue helicopter.
36. How often you (*visit*) your cousins when you (*he*) in the States last year?
37. John's children (*use*) to be well-behaved but now they are quite naughty.
38. While I (*row*) across the lake I (*lose*) one oar.
39. At school I (*dislike*) the maths teacher because he always (*pick*) on me.
40. Nobody (*watch*), so the little boy (*take*) a packet of sweets from the shelf and (*put*) it in his pocket.
41. The plane (*crash*) into a bridge because it (*fly*) too low.
42. While I (*try*) to get my car started, a passing car (*stop*) and the driver (*offer*) to help me.
43. Last fall I (*drive*) along a free way when I (*run*) out of gas. Luckily a truck (*stop*) and (*give*) me a lift.
44. When they (*walk*) through the countryside one day they (*come*) across a ruined mansion.
45. While we (*clean*) the attic, we (*come*) across our grandmother's old school books.
46. The driver (*fall*) asleep as he (*drive*) along.
47. I (*not/understand*) what (*goon*). Several people (*shout*) at me and one (*wave*) a newspaper in front of my face.
48. The article (*say*) that crime (*grow*) at a rapid rate, especially in urban areas.
49. At six o'clock this morning I (*have*) a wonderful dream, but then the alarm (*go*) off.
50. Laura (*not/wear*) her glasses at that time, so she (*not/notice*) what kind of car the man (*drive*).
51. We (*not/go*) to the skating rink, because it (*freeze*) hard.
52. While I (*have*) a shower someone (*knock*) at the door.
53. She said she (*get*) more forgetful as she (*grow*) older.
54. The only thing I disliked about him when we (*study*) at college was that he always (*borrow*) my things without asking.
55. While we (*get*) on the train, we (*see*) a robbery take place.'
56. While the boys (*skate*) they (*slip*) on the thin ice and (*fall*) into the water.
57. The sun (*shine*) so brightly that Maria (*have*) to put on her sunglasses.
58. Bobby always (*make*) up excuses for being late when he studied at school.

1.3. THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST SIMPLE (INDEFINITE) TENSE-FORMS FORMATION

The Present Perfect tense is formed with the help of the auxiliary *have/has* and the Past Participle of the main verb.

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|------|--------|----------|----------|--------|---------------|------|----------|
| I | have | worked | I | have not | worked | have | I | worked ? |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| he | | | he | | | | he | |
| she | has | come | she | has not | come | has | she | come? |
| it | | | it | | | | it | |
| we | | | we | | | | we | |
| you | have | | you | have not | | have | you | |
| they | | | they | | | | they | |

Contractions:

've = have

's = has

haven't = have not hasn't = has not

USAGE

The Present Perfect tense denotes:

1. Completed past actions connected in their result with the present either because of the actual evidence of the result or its importance for the present. The recent completion of an action is often expressed by the adverbials '*recently, lately, already*' in affirmative sentences and the adverbial '*yet*' in questions and negatives.

I've recently (lately) spoken to him on the phone. I'm afraid I've forgotten my key. Do you want some more coffee? - No, thanks, I've already had enough.

Has your younger brother left school yet? She hasn't found the dog yet.

To show that something has happened very recently the adverbial *just* is used.

Mary has just gone out.

Just now, however, which means 'a moment ago' is used with the Past Simple.

Mary went out just now.

There can be no adverbial in the sentence when the present evidence of the result of a completed past action is clear

from the context.

My mother is angry because I've lost my watch.

The importance of a completed past action for the present stands out clearly in complex sentences with *superlative constructions, ordinal numerals or 'the only' in the principal clause.*

It's the best salad I have eaten in this restaurant.

It's the second time I have seen this film.

This is the only place he's been to.

This is the first time I've felt really relaxed.

The Present Perfect for completed past actions is often used with *today, this morning, this week, this year*, etc. when these periods are not over.

I have written three letters this morning, (when it is still 'this morning')

It must be remembered that the Present Perfect is not used with 'definite past time' adverbials like *yesterday, last time, a year ago, the other day*, etc. These adverbials are used with the Past Simple which emphasizes the time of the event. Compare, e.g.:

Deborah has ironed your shirt, (emphasis on the result)

*Deborah ironed your shirt yesterday morning.
(emphasis on the time of the action)*

2. Incomplete actions that started in the past, lasted over a period of time and are still taking place in the present. The Present Perfect in this meaning is typical of verbs not used in the continuous aspect but is not limited to them. The starting point of the action is expressed by an adverbial with '**since**' while an adverbial with '**for**' is used to denote a period of time. (Compare the use of similar adverbials with '**for**' with the Past Simple). Such adverbs as *ever, never, lately, recently, always, often, all my life, so far*, etc. are also often used with the Present Perfect to denote incomplete past actions.

They have been married for 20 years.

I've lived here since 1992.

Have you ever ridden a helicopter?

I have never tasted papaya.

She's been here several times before.

Compare the use of the Past Simple and the Present Perfect tense-forms.

1. *Ann bought herself a new dress yesterday. She paid 30 pounds for it.*

2. *Have a look. I've just bought a lovely pair of shoes.*

3. *Marie and Pierre Curie discovered radium and in 1903 won the Nobel Prize.*

4. *The police haven't found the boy yet. He disappeared 3 days ago.*

5. *How many times have you been in love? When did you fall in love first?*

6. *Ron hasn't studied much this term.*

7. *When did they get married? - Last year. So they have been married for about a year.*

8. *Chemistry has never been my favourite subject. I liked Maths when I studied at school.*

9. *Sam hasn't drunk alcohol since he got into a car accident.*

10. *I bought everything I needed and went straight home.*

11. *I have bought a new car. - But where's the car you bought last year?*

12. *That's where I used to live in my childhood.*

13. *Where is your key? - I don't know. I'm afraid I've lost it. - But when did you see it last?*

14. *Peter was meeting someone that night so I stayed at the office and worked for a few extra hours.*

PRACTICE

1. Choose between the Present Perfect and the Past Simple tense-forms.

1. Hello, Mr... er ... Mr - I'm sorry, I forgot/have forgotten your name.

2. News just came in/has just come in of an earthquake in Southern Mangrovia. According to the first reports the quake struck/has struck just after midnight last night.

3. Alice bought/has bought a new car. - Really? Where did she get/has she got the money?

4. I have often wondered/often wondered what he does for a living.

5. He was/has been ill before Christmas, but he has been/was fine since then.

6. Things have been/were difficult since Sharon has lost/lost her job.

7. Paul was/has been keen on music since childhood.

8. Did you two meet/Have you two met before? David, this is Ann.

9. Did you see/Have you seen Jane by any chance? There's a letter for her.

10. This is the only occasion that I have seen/saw him wearing a tie.

2. Choose the appropriate adverbial of time.

1. I can't remember when/how long I have had this CD player.

2. Have you eaten asparagus before/already!

3. Did you live here in/since 1995?

4. I always got up at six lately/in those days.

5. She fell asleep an hour ago/for an hour.

6. I haven't paid for my ticket *still/yet*.
7. We've known each other *since/for many years*.
8. They haven't seen Carol *since/for last year*.
9. Actually I had dinner with Paul *last night/lately*.
10. *Tire other clay/Lately* Nick received a parcel from home.
11. Have you spoken to the manager *still/yet*?
12. I've seen Margaret quite often *lately/from time to time*.
13. Ruth bought a portable computer *since then/last year*.
14. Sorry, but I haven't finished that work *already/yet*.
15. The price of petrol has risen considerably *last time/over the past year*.

3. Open the brackets using the Present Perfect or the Past Simple tense-forms.

1. I (*shout*) at them and they (*run*) away.
2. What's the best film you ever (*see*)!
3. Simon is not at home. He (*go*) to a football match.
4. It was such a wonderful performance that we (*applaud*) for fifteen minutes.
5. Why do you look so sad? Anything (*happen*)!
6. Jaime lives in Venezuela; he never (*see*) snow.
7. I (*not/wake*) at 7 o'clock yesterday, because my mother (*not/be*) at home.
8. Anyone (*see*) my dictionary? I can't find it.
9. A lot of rain (*fall*) last week.
10. When I (*get*) home late yesterday evening my dad (*be*) very angry.
11. I (*know*) Helen for 10 years. We (*study*) at university together. She was one of the best students.
12. Alexander Fleming (*invent*) penicillin in 1928.
13. The house they (*buy*) looks much larger than ours.
14. I (*order*) a taxi to take me to the airport. So we'll be on time.
15. You (*cut*) your finger! How it (*happen*)!
16. Peter (*not/eat*) all the bread and butter, he (*leave*) some on the plate.
17. He (*be*) interested in jazz ever since he (*leave*) school.
18. We (*have*) a lovely time in Wales. - So you (*enjoy*) your holiday, didn't you?
19. I (*use*) to like swimming but I don't now.
20. I never (*see*) so many beautiful girls as here at the party.
21. My elder brother (*have*) a car for two years already. He (*buy*) it in France.
22. Jane (*recover*) yet? - No, she is still in hospital.
23. My watch (*stop*). I must take it to the watchmaker's.
24. Shakespeare (*be*) born in 1564 and (*die*) in 1616.
25. I'm sorry I can't accept your invitation. We already (*make*) our plans for the holiday.
26. I (*begin*) to teach Max to ride a bike last year.
27. We (*run*) out of sugar. Can you go and get some from the shop?
28. My brother is an actor. He already (*appear*) in several films.
29. What your father (*give*) you for your last birthday?
30. You (*see*) Tom? - Yes, I (*to talk*) with him an hour ago.
31. Are you the boy whose dog (*make*) a terrible noise at night? - I'm sorry, but you are mistaken, sir. I never (*own*) a dog.
32. What (*happen*) there? - The dog (*bite*) the boy when he entered the garden.
33. You (*know*) each other before? - Yes. We first (*meet*) 3 years ago.
34. He (*take*) off his pullover, (*lie*) down on the sofa and (*start*) to read a magazine.
35. I don't keep pets now but I (*use*) to keep a dog when I (*be*) a boy.
36. I (*iron*) Jim's shirts this morning and in the afternoon I (*do*) the shopping.
37. Why are you limping? - I (*twist*) my ankle.
38. The plane (*take*) off from London at 9.00 and (*land*) in Geneva at 10.30.
39. Joanna (*not change*); *she* is the same as ever.
40. When I (*switch*) on the dishwasher, the machine (*make*) a loud noise.
41. People always (*want*) to be able to fly like birds in the sky.
42. I once (*play*) a guitar which (*have*) only five strings.
43. I never (*teach*) a class where the students are so lazy.
44. I (*lose*) a button. I don't suppose I'll ever find it.
45. The slower you eat the more you will think you (*eat*).
46. You (*be*) already late for classes twice this week, Nick.
47. What a surprise! You're the very person I (*want*) to see so much.

48. They say the police already (*catch*) both of the thieves.
49. When we (*be*) kids, we (*love*) the beach very much, so we (*use*) to spend all our holidays at the sea.
50. You (*make up*) your minds yet? What you (*decide*) to do?
51. She (*slip*) her arm under his and (*give*) him a nudge.
52. Thanks a lot. It (*be*) a wonderful holiday. We (*have*) great fun.
53. Since when you (*lose*) sight of him?
54. Anyone (*leave*) a note for me?
55. The employment office (*call*) me twice since I (*move*) to Los Angeles.
56. When we (*live*) in the north the water pipes (*use*) to freeze every winter and we (*have*) to call in a plumber.
57. People (*use*) to come at the weekends, but during the week I (*be*) alone in that huge house.
58. You (*work*) as a mechanic before? - Yes, I (*use*) to change flat tires.
59. We (*see*) him at the summer course in London.
60. All the shirts you (*send*) your father (*fit*) him perfectly so far.
61. Although I (*study*) French for years I have difficulties in speaking the language.
62. John whose grades are the highest in the school (*receive*) a scholarship.
63. Yesterday we (*have*) supper with the neighbours of ours.
64. Some years ago I (*come*) across this photo in an old magazine.
65. We (*not/give*) him a thing to eat since he (*arrive*).
66. Jerry (*fail*) his exams. He'll have to take them again.
67. It's ages since I last (*see*) a decent comedy film on television.
68. We understood that it (*be*) just a slip of the tongue.
69. The police (*find*) the bomb yet?
70. When I (*go*) to book a ticket to Athens, I (*find*) that the flight (*be*) full.
71. I'm not disappointed with today's result. After all we (*win*) ten matches already this season.
72. I never (*do*) anything like it before. We'll have to start from scratch.
73. My computer (*break down*) again. It's time for me to buy a new word processor.
74. I can't afford a holiday abroad until I (*pay back*) all my debts.
75. They always (*bring*) flowers when they came to visit me.
76. The butcher (*cut*) some steak, (*wrap*) it up and (*hand*) it to me.
77. Since the baby (*be*) born, they (*have*) a lot of sleepless nights.
78. I'm sorry for her. She (*has*) bad luck all her life.
79. Jack (*climb*) quite a number of mountains but he never (*be*) to Everest.
80. You (*see*) my gloves, by any chance?
81. He (*give up*) smoking yet? When he (*do*) it?
82. What's up? You (*hurt*) your ankle? How you (*do*) it?

1.4. THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) AND THE PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE TENSE-FORMS FORMATION

The Present Perfect Continuous tense is formed with the help of *the auxiliary have/has been* and *the Present Participle of the main verb*.

Table 7

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|------|--------------|----------|----------|--------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| I | have | been working | I | have not | been working | have | I | been working? |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| he | | | he | | | | he | |
| she | has | | she | has not | | has | he she it | |
| it | | | it | | | | | |
| we | | | we | | | | we you | |
| you | have | | you | have not | | have | they | |
| they | | | they | | | | | |

USAGE

The Present Perfect Continuous (Progressive) tense is used to denote a) an action which started in the past and has been in progress up to the present and including the present or b) a past action of certain duration completed by the present moment and having visible results or effects in the present.

Depending on whether the activity a) is still continuing at the moment of speech or b) has been completed by this time

the inclusive and exclusive meanings of the given tense-form are distinguished.

He's been repairing his car for an hour already. (he is still doing it)

It has been raining since morning, (and it is still raining now)

Your jacket is torn again! You've been fighting. (but not fighting at the moment of speech)

To denote the period of time or the starting point of the action adverbials with 'for' and 'since' are normally used with these tense-forms.

The Present Perfect Continuous (Progressive) tense is similar to the Present Perfect Simple in showing connection between the past and present. But the Present Perfect Continuous tense is used for **more temporary** actions and situations **and emphasizes the duration** of the activity. The Present Perfect Simple is used for **more permanent** situations and expresses an idea of the completion of an action **emphasizing the result** of the action for the present. *His parents have lived in London all their lives. I've been living in Sally's flat for the last month.*

Note the difference between the Present Perfect Continuous and the Present Perfect tenses from the point of view of Russian-English and English-Russian translation.

| | |
|--|--|
| 1. - You look hot. - I've been running all the way. Я бежала всю дорогу... | . He's run all the distance to the finish fairly well. Он пробежал всю дистанцию... |
| 2. I've been learning irregular verbs all afternoon. Я учил... | I've learnt irregular verbs (= I know them). Я выучил... |
| 3. Sorry about the mess - I've been painting the house. Я крашу дом... | 3. I've painted two rooms since lunchtime. Я покрасил ... |

Compare the use of the Present Perfect Continuous, the Present Perfect Simple and the Present Continuous tense-forms.

1. *Someone has been eating my chocolates. There are only six left.*

2. *Someone has eaten all my chocolates. The box is empty.*

3. *Have you decided where to go? - Not yet. We have been thinking about it for the whole week.*

4. *Why are you crying? What's wrong? Has anyone been rude to you?*

5. *I remember meeting your brother last summer, but I haven't seen him this year. What has he been doing since then?*

6. *Have you done your homework yet, Liz? - No, I'm still doing it. I've been busy since morning.*

1. *Have you had a good evening? - Well, I've been watching this film on television but it's rubbish, so I think I'll turn it off now.*

8. *Oh, David, I've been looking for you!*

9. *Your mother sends her love. I've just been speaking to her on the phone.*

PRACTICE

1. Choose the appropriate tense-form.

1. A. - What have you *done/have you been doing* with my knife? Where is it?

B. - I've put it back in your drawer.

A. - (taking it out) What have you *done/have you been doing* with it? The blade's all twisted! *Have you been using/have you used* it to open tins?

2. A. - Do you see those people on that little sandy island? They *have been waving/have waved* their handkerchiefs for the last half-hour. I wonder why.

B. - They need help. The tide is coming in and very soon that island will be under water. *Have you sat/have you been sitting* calmly without doing anything to help them?

A. - I *have never been/have never been being* here before I *haven't been hearing/haven't heard* about the tides here. What's up? What *are you looking for/have you been looking for? Have you lost/have you been losing* something?

3. A. - *Are you still painting/have you been still painting* your country house?

B. - Yes. *I'm painting/I've been painting* it for several days already. I think it'll look beautiful when it's finished.

2. Open the brackets using the Present Perfect

Continuous/ Present Perfect/ Present Simple/ Present Continuous tense-forms.

1. How long he *(live)* in Manchester? - All his life. He was born there.

2. Mr Woods *(not/feel)* well for over a month.

3. Look. Can you see Simon over there? - He *(sit)* in the corner. - Yes. He *(wait)* for Jack. He *(sit)* here since two o'clock.

4. They *(be)* in London now. They *(live)* there for the last six months.

5. I *(learn)* Spanish since last year.

6. How many driving lessons you *(have)* lately?

7. They *(repair)* the road all this week, but they *(not/finish)* it yet.

8. Where you *(be)*? I *(wait)* for you for over an hour.

9. I *(type)* this report since yesterday and I'm only halfway through.

10. Your mum is still in the kitchen. She (*cook*) all the morning. - Yes. We (*expect*) guests tonight.
11. You are out of breath. You (*run*)!
12. It (*rain*) since yesterday evening. I wonder when it'll stop.
13. I (*die*) of thirst. Is there a water-fountain near here?
14. My daughter (*study*) English at London University. She (*be*) there for two years already.
15. Don't rush me. I (*work*) as fast as I can.
16. I (*read*) some of your poetry. It's not bad.
17. Sorry about the mess. I (*paint*) the house. I already (*paint*) the front.
18. You won't believe it, but I (*wait*) two months for my phone to be repaired.
19. Oh look, the sky (*get*) darker and darker. I think it's going to rain.
20. You look tired. - Yes, I (*work*) non-stop all day.
21. Since when he (*learn*) Chinese? - Since he got to university.
22. We (*build*) this garage ourselves and hope to finish it within the next two months.
23. We (*not/finish*) cleaning the machines yet. We need some more time to do it.
24. You look tired. I think you (*work*) hard lately and you (*not/get*) enough fresh air and exercise.
25. It's the most beautiful house I ever (*see*).
26. Oh, you (*have*) a shave! You look strange without a beard.
27. I (*borrow*) books from this library since we moved here.
28. It (*rain*) steadily for three days on end now.
29. I (*not/see*) you for ages. What you (*do*)!
30. She (*be*) on the phone for half an hour now. Who she (*talk*) to?
31. He (*collect*) stamps ever since he was a small boy.
32. He never (*believe*) in the importance of women's education.
33. I (*study*) hard of late. I've got exams next week.
34. It (*get*) harder and harder to find time.
35. Jimmy always (*have*) cold and chest problems.
36. You're very late. - I (*talk*) to Henry and he just goes on and on.
37. It is the first time he (*clean*) his own boots.
38. Why are my books all over the floor? - Helen (*look*) at them.
39. Older people (*become*) more isolated now.
40. I know that since January he (*be*) in charge of the marketing division.
41. Katia says she (*be*) very tired recently. She (*work*) almost sixty hours a week for the past month.
42. My daughter-in-law (*try*) to find a job since she graduated from university.
43. How long you (*be*) a hairdresser?
44. The police (*investigate*) the break-in at the college since last September.
45. She always (*be*) obsessed by her appearance.
46. They are so scruffy because they (*camp*) all week.
47. I'm fed up. I (*wait*) for the bus since three o'clock.
48. Carol already (*make*) ten phone calls and it's only nine o'clock.
49. She's obviously very unhappy. She (*sit*) alone in her bedroom for most of the day.
50. Paul and Jean (*go out*) together for about a year now. 51. I can smell something nice. What you (*cook*)!
52. He always (*argue*) or (*fight*).
53. I'm afraid my nails are a bit dirty. I (*work*) in the garden.
54. I'm afraid I (*break*) one of your glasses.
55. You look exhausted. What you (*do*)!
56. Since I last stayed at this hotel, they (*put*) their prices up.
57. The police (*arrest*) the man who is suspected of committing the murder.
58. Since I (*broke*) my leg I (*depend*) on my daughter to see to the shopping and housework.
59. He (*apply*) for jobs without success for months now.
60. The hall (*hold*) 300 people on some occasions, though you'd hardly believe it.
61. Sorry about the mess! The workmen (*install*) a new boiler in the bathroom all morning.
62. The success of the agricultural show (*depend*) very much on the weather in recent years.
63. Up to now the discount (*apply*) only to children under 10. From next month we (*plan*) to extend it to children under 16.
64. Food prices (*rise*) so rapidly in the past few months that some families have been forced to alter their eating habits.
65. Although Max (*cook*) for many years, he still doesn't know how to prepare French foods in the traditional manner.

3. All these sentences contain errors. Correct them.

1. When have you left school?
2. How long is she feeling unwell?
3. I've met such a nice person before never.
4. I'm waiting for you since four o'clock.

5. She never wrote a letter by hand since she had bought a computer.
6. I wonder where have you been all this time.
7. I am learning English during five years.
8. You never know how he has been going to react.
9. She has tripped over the cat and fell nearly over.
10. Look! I found a ten-pound note! - Where have you found it?
11. Margaret has been taking driving lessons now.
12. In recent years terrorism has been becoming a greater threat.
13. The rain has come suddenly and has soaked all the washing.
14. Ever since we have met, you have never asked me what I prefer to do.
15. How long do you live here?
16. I am interested in sports since my childhood.
17. What are you doing since you left Cambridge?

1.5. THE PAST PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE-FORMS

A. The Past Perfect Tense

FORMATION

The Past Perfect Tense is formed with the **auxiliary had and the Past Participle of the main verb.**

Table 8

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|-----|------------------|----------|---------|------------------|---------------|------|--------------------|
| I | | worked broken | I | | worked broken | | I | worked? broken? |
| YOU | | | you | | | | you | |
| he | had | | he | had not | | had | he | |
| she | | | she | | | | she | |
| it | | | it | | | | it | |
| we | | | we | | | | we | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| they | | | they | | | | they | |

Contractions

'd = had; hadn't = had not

USAGE

The *Past Perfect* tense denotes a past event (action or state) that happened before another past event. In other words, the Past Perfect Tense is used to denote an action in the distant past which is contrasted to another action which is less far away in the past. This priority of one past action can be indicated by an adverbial phrase with the preposition 'by' or by a clause with the conjunctions *before*, *no sooner ... than*, *hardly ... when*, *scarcely ... when*. It may also become clear from the logical relations between the clauses or sentences in a context.

The letter had arrived by the end of the week.

By March the snow hadn't melted yet.

Had they left before the trouble started?

They hadn't yet started eating by the time I arrived at the party.

Hardly had we put up a tent when it started to rain.

(or We had hardly put up a tent when it started to rain.)

No sooner had he arrived than he was told to start back again.

I could see from his face that he had received bad news.

I hadn't eaten all day so I was very hungry when I got home.

I couldn't get into the car. The boys had hidden the car keys.

Note that when there is a simple succession of past actions (without their being contrasted in time) the Past Simple tense is used for each event.

I got to the stadium at 7.15 and the game started at 7.30.

She thanked him for his hospitality. They shook hands and he wished her a pleasant journey.

The Past Perfect Tense is commonly used in Reported (Indirect) Speech after the reporting verbs such as *say*, *tell*, *ask*, *explain*, *wonder*, etc. in the Past Simple.

She wondered who had left the door open. She said she had bought a lovely pair of shoes.

When Direct Speech is transformed into Reported Speech the adverbials of 'absolute past' are replaced by 'relative' indications of time: 'yesterday' is replaced by 'the day before', or 'the previous day', 'ago' by 'before', 'last night' by 'the previous night'.

I asked if the Browns had left the day before. We knew David had left school two years before.

Notice that the Past Perfect in Reported Speech is the result of changing two tense-forms in Direct Speech: the Past

Simple and the Present Perfect.

| Direct Speech | Indirect Speech |
|---|---|
| 1. Ann said to me: «Graham has lost his new watch». 2. Ann said to me: «Bob went to a disco last Sunday». | 1. Ann told me that Graham had lost his new watch. 2. Ann told me that Bob had gone to a disco the previous Sunday. |

B. The Past Perfect Continuous

FORMATION

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense is formed with the auxiliary *had been* and the *Present Participle* of the main verb.

Table 9

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|------|---------|----------|---------|--------------|---------------|------|---------------|
| I | | working | I | | been working | | I | been working? |
| you | | | you | | | had | you | |
| he | had | | he | had not | | | he | |
| she | been | | she | been | | | she | |
| it | | | it | | | | it | |
| we | | | we | | | | we | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| they | | | they | | | | they | |

Contractions

'd = had; hadn't = had not

USAGE

The Past Perfect Continuous is used to denote a) actions or situations continuing over a period up to a specific time in the past (inclusive meaning), b) past actions of certain duration which had visible results in the past (exclusive meaning).

When she arrived I had already been waiting for three hours.

I had been using the machine for some time before I realized there was no ink in it.

Paul's head ached because he had been sitting in the sun.

When used in Reported (Indirect) Speech the Past Perfect Continuous replaces both the Present Perfect Continuous and the Past Continuous of a Direct Speech sentence (if the reporting verb is in the Past Simple).

| Direct Speech | Indirect Speech |
|---|--|
| 1. Mrs. Brown said: «I have been working hard all day and I am very tired». 1. Jane asked: «Was it still raining when you arrived?» | 1. Mrs. Brown said she had been working very hard all day and she was very tired. 2. Jane wondered if it had still been raining when he arrived. |

Compare the use of the Past Perfect Simple, the Past Perfect Continuous and the Past Simple tense-forms.

1. She ran downstairs to open the door, but it was too late. The postman had already gone.
2. She apologized and said she had already had lunch.
3. Hejtdad been smoking for 20 years before he finally gave it up last year.
4. All the roads were blocked: it had been snowing all night long.
5. I had hardly got off the tram when it suddenly started moving.
6. I felt awful after dinner. I had eaten too much.
7. It turned out that Patric had broken his leg the previous morning.
8. I was pleased to see my old college friends at the conference last week as we hadn't seen each other since we finished our course.
9. Maggie took a hot bath after she had been working in the garden all afternoon.
10. I had a pleasant surprise when I got to my room: someone had put some flowers there for me.

PRACTICE

1. Choose the appropriate tense-forms: Past Perfect Simple/Past Perfect Continuous and Past Simple/Past Continuous.

1. He turned off the electric light. It *had been burning/had burnt* all night.
2. Nobody bothered to inform me that the school *decided/ had decided* to have a special holiday that Friday.
3. Paul *offered/had offered* me another drink but I decided I *drank/had drunk* enough.
4. I knew I *did/had done* well in my exams even before I received the official results.
5. I *saw/had seen* right away it was the place I *looked/ had looked/had been looking* for all my life.
6. As soon as he raised his eyes I *knew/had known* that we *met/had met* before.
7. Excuse me, I *had ordered/ordered* a coffee half an hour ago. Is it ready yet?
8. She *finished/had finished* most of the work by the time her boss arrived.

2. Choose the appropriate adverbial of time.

1. She was working in the garden *at/by* that time.
2. Scarcely had the bell gone *when/than* the students filled the corridor.
3. *The other day/One of these days* he called on me to return the book he had borrowed.
4. The sun had no sooner hidden behind the clouds *than/ when* we heard the first claps of thunder.
5. The letter hadn't arrived *by/until* the end of the week yet.
6. I had tidied up the flat *at/by* that time.
7. It wasn't up *to/until* 1995 that Robert could afford to go on holiday abroad.
8. They had discharged Nick from hospital *before/till* we came.
9. His father had been running a bookshop *during/for* two years.
10. They reached the top of the mountain *by/in* four hours.
11. I had finished my homework *at/by* supper time.
12. They lived in Newcastle *by/in* 1983.

3. Open the brackets using the appropriate tense-form.

1. By the time I (*get*) to the station the train (*leave*).
2. Patrick's mother (*be*) very angry when he (*come*) home late because she (*worry*) about him all evening.
3. The children (*start*) a fire. They (*play*) with matches.
4. Brenda (*disappear*) before I (*have*) time to talk to her.
5. Bruce (*go*) to hospital because he (*cut*) his hand while he (*try*) to mend a broken window.
6. It (*be*) more than a month before I (*realize*) what (*happen*).
7. When Jack (*not/arrive*) by 6p.m. I (*know*) he (*miss*) the bus.
8. When I (*meet*) him he (*work*) as a plumber for a year or so.
9. We scarcely (*start*) eating when there (*be*) another scream.
10. We (*look*) through the agreement before we (*sign*) it.
11. I (*be*) very pleased when my son (*find*) my watch because we (*look*) for it for hours.
12. Nina (*think*) she (*leave*) her purse in a locker in the changing room the day before.
13. I (*wake*) up and (*look*) out of the window. Everything (*be*) white. It (*snow*) all night.
14. Not until I (*look*) at my watch did I realize how much time (*pass*).
15. Karen (*admit*) that she (*make*) a mistake and (*apologize*).
16. Isabel (*send*) a postcard to the girl she (*make*) friends with while she (*attend*) a language course.
17. They (*run*) out of petrol because Paul (*use*) the car several times before.
18. When we (*get*) to the airport we (*hear*) that they (*cancel*) all the flights.
19. When our teacher (*see*) what Tom (*do*) she (*be*) absolutely furious.
20. My old watch (*work*) very well for many years before I (*drop*) it.
21. I (*run*) out of money but luckily I (*be*) able to borrow enough to get home.
22. I (*have*) to be early the next morning, so I (*excuse*) myself and (*leave*) the party.
23. He (*keep*) his job although the manager (*threaten*) to sack him several times.
24. When Mr Gabb (*come*) out of the water, he (*find*) that somebody (*take*) all his clothes.
25. After the movie (*finish*) they (*decide*) to get something to eat.
26. Many modern medicines were not invented by western scientists but by tribal people who (*use*) them for generations before Europeans (*arrive*).
27. It was not surprising that she (*start*) getting a bad toothache. She (*not/go*) to the dentist for two years.
28. Her work (*look*) really neat because she (*use*) the computer.
29. The chairman's main fault was that he persistently (*interrupt*) the speakers before they (*finish*).
30. After she (*dress*) and (*eat*) her breakfast, Linda (*rush*) off to her office for a meeting with her accountant.
31. Peter already (*see*) that musical before he (*read*) the review about it.
32. When I (*go*) into the room I could smell cigarette smoke. Obviously somebody (*smoke*) in there.
33. Because Jasper (*make*) an appointment with his dentist beforehand he (*hope*) he wouldn't have to wait long, although there (*be*) a lot of people in the waiting-room when he (*arrive*).
34. By the time Bill (*leave*) school, he (*speak*) good French and German. When he (*be*) at university he (*learn*) Italian and Spanish.
35. Yesterday Jenny (*send*) me a very apologetic letter explaining why she (*not/do*) what she (*promise*).
36. Ann only (*work*) there for a few days when she (*decide*) to leave.
37. The bank (*tell*) me last week there (*be*) no money in my account. I (*spend*) it all.
38. The label (*come*) off the tin and I didn't know how to cook the meat.

39. When I (*get*) back after lunch, Jean (*tell*) me that somebody (*phone*) when I (*be*) out.
40. They (*get*) married in 1990, just a year after they (*fall*) in love.
41. While I (*try*) to get my car started, a passing car (*stop*) and the driver (*offer*) to help me.
42. Penicillin was discovered when Alexander Fleming (*find*) some mould growing on a laboratory dish he (*leave*) beside the window.
43. David (*admit*) that he (*hit*) the other car, but (*say*) he (*not/damage*) it.
44. Jane (*miss*) the party because no one (*inform*) her about it.
45. It (*turn*) out that they (*use*) that business for quite a time as a screen for their drug-dealing activities.
46. Hardly Harry (*start*) working when he (*realize*) that he (*need*) to go to the library.
47. As Lucy (*walk*) home, she (*try*) to remember what (*happen*).
48. Because Sam and Tony (*do*) all the work themselves, they (*be*) unwilling to give the results to John.
49. By the time Liz (*be*) eighteen she (*study*) English for six years.
50. Hopi Indians (*raise*) cotton to make cloth for centuries before the arrival of Europeans in the American Southwest.
51. We (*fly*) for twenty minutes when the pilot (*announce*) we (*have*) to go back because of bad weather.
52. By the time the last marathon runner (*cross*) the finishing line, nearly everyone (*go*) home.
53. The house (*burn*) to the ground by the time the fire brigade (*arrive*).

4. Correct errors where necessary.

1. The jumper was shrinking when I had washed it.
2. Mike got really exhausted in his first marathon because he didn't run such a long race before.
3. The light in the room showed that Mr Simpson had been waiting for me.
4. The Titanic had been travelling to New York when it hit an iceberg and sank in the Atlantic.
5. The footballer ran towards the goal when he fell over.
6. George said that he didn't decide yet which side to support.
7. I took the decision after I have spoken to him.
8. Bill was working at the same problem for two hours when Jack phoned him and asked if he solved it.
9. I knew that Nick had boarded with an American family since his arrival and he had been learning a great deal about American habits and customs.
10. I found out why my pen friend didn't get my letters. I've been sending them to the wrong address!

1.6. WAYS OF EXPRESSING FUTURE ACTIONS IN ENGLISH

A. The Future Simple Tense

FORMATION

The Future Simple (Indefinite) tense is formed with the help of the auxiliary *shall/will* and the *Infinitive of the main verb* without *to*.

Table 10

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|-------|------|----------|-----------|------|---------------|------|-------|
| I | shall | | I | shall not | | shall | I | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| he | | | he | | | | he | |
| she | will | work | she | will not | work | will | she | work? |
| it | | | it | | | | it | |
| we | shall | | we | shall not | | shall | we | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| they | will | | they | will not | | will | they | |

Contractions

'll = will (shall) shan't = shall not won't = will not

In modern English *will* is preferable with all persons. Any difference between *shall* and *will* disappears in everyday speech, where the contractions *I'll* and *we'll* are normally used.

USAGE

The Future Simple (Indefinite) denotes:

1. A predicted future action, a happening which is inevitable and out of anybody's control.

Next year I'll be 18.

Spring will come soon.

In 100 years' time there will be a lot more people than there are now.

Reference to the future is typically indicated by adverbials of time such as *tomorrow*, *the day after tomorrow*, *in a week* (*month, year*), *next year*, *in 2008*, etc. Sometimes reference to the future is clear from the situation.

Spring has come, so the snow will start melting, the birds will come back home.

2. An action which the speaker regards as possible, probable or likely to happen in future (near or remote).

I'm sure he'll get better.
I don't think I'll go out tonight, I'm too tired.
No doubt you'll enjoy the performance.
I don't think Ann will pass her exams easily. She was idling away her time during the term.
Do you think they'll win the match?
I'll probably be a bit late this evening. 3. An action decided on spontaneously, out of circumstances (i.e. an action which is not part of a plan).
Don't lift the suitcase. I'll help you.
It looks like rain. I'll take my umbrella then.
It's Kate's birthday tomorrow. - Is it? O.K. I'll send her a card this afternoon.
What would you like to drink? - I'll have a coke, please.
 Close in meaning to this case is the use of the Future Simple in complex sentences with clauses of time and real condition. It must be remembered that the Future Simple is found only in *the principal clause*, whereas *the subordinate clause* takes the *Present Simple* or the *Present Perfect* (to express a completed action).
I'll phone you as soon as I arrive.
When you return home you'll notice a lot of changes.
It's pouring down. We'll get wet through if we go out.
When you see Jane again, you won't recognize her.
Come on! Mum will be worried if we are late again.
I won't send the parcel until I hear from you.
As soon as Bob and Ash ton have got married they'll move to California.
I shan't phone you until I have done my homework.
 In *Indirect Speech* when the reporting verb in the principal clause is in the Past tense the Future Simple tense is replaced by the Future in the Past and the adverbials like *tomorrow*, *next week*, etc. are replaced by *the next day*, *the next week*, etc.
We knew that Christie would phone the next week. Brian informed us he would go to university the next year.

B. The Present Continuous (Progressive) Tense

This tense-form is used to denote a *near-future* action which arises out of *arrangement or plan* and is sure to happen. It is frequently associated with the verbs of movement (*go, come, arrive, fly, move*, etc), but other groups of verbs are used as well.

I'm leaving tomorrow.
My dad is flying to Paris tonight.
Wednesday won't do, I'm afraid I'm attending a conference.
She says she's baby-sitting tonight.

Note the use of the Continuous forms of the verbs '*see, hear*' in the meaning of '*meet*', '*learn*' in colloquial English.
I'm seeing the dentist tomorrow.

C. The Construction «to be going + Infinitive»

This is used to denote:

1. *Apian or personal intention.*
Bill is going to sell his car.
What are you going to do at Christmas?
2. *To predict future events, based on concrete evidence.*
Look at the clouds! Isn't it going to rain?
He is definitely going to get better (there are signs of recovery).

D. The Simple Present Tense

This tense is used instead of the Present Continuous to express a *definite future arrangement* in a *more formal* language. Like in the case with the Present Continuous, the future meaning of the Present Simple must be indicated by a special adverbial modifier or the context, e.g.

The train leaves at 6 a.m. tomorrow.
The film starts at 2 p.m.

E. The Future Continuous (Progressive) Tense

FORMATION

The Future Continuous (Progressive) Tense is formed with *shall/will be + the Present Participle*.

Table 11

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|-------|---------|----------|----------|---------|---------------|------|----------------------|
| I | shall | | I | shall | | shall | I | |
| we | | | we | not | | | we | |
| you | | | you | | be | | you | be |
| he | | | he | | working | | he | working ⁹ |
| she | will | be | she | will not | | will | she | |
| it | | working | it | | | | it | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| they | | | they | | | | they | |

Contractions

'11 = will (shall) shan't = shall not won't = will not

In modern English **will** is preferable for all persons (see the Note for the Future Simple).

USAGE

The Future Continuous tense denotes:

1. An action which will be going on at a definite moment

in the future. Indicated either by an adverbial phrase (at 3 p.m., at this time tomorrow, etc) or by another future action (usually in the Present Simple or Present Continuous in clauses of time).

I'll be working in the library at 10 tomorrow.

This time next week we 'll be crossing the Pacific Ocean.

The children will be doing their homework when

I come back from work.

I'll be buttering the bread while you are slicing the tomatoes.

You 'll recognize her easily when you see her. She'll be wearing a yellow hat.

2. An action which will be going on during a certain period of time in the future.

From 8 till 12 I'll be busy at university. I'll be having classes at this time.

Will you be using your bike this evening?

Note that in Indirect Speech when the verb in the principal clause is in the Past tense-form the Future Continuous tense is replaced by the Future Continuous in the Past.

She said the children would be sleeping when she arrived home

F. The Future Perfect Tense**FORMATION**

The Future Perfect Tense is formed by means of the Future Simple of the *auxiliary verb to have* and the Past Participle of the main verb.

Table 12

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|-------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|---------------|------|------------------------|
| I | shall | | I | shall | | shall | I | |
| we | | have | we | not | have | | we | have |
| | | gone | | | gone by | | | gone by |
| | | by | | | 4 o'clock | | | 4 o'clock ⁷ |
| | | 4 | | | | | | |
| he | will | o'clock | he | will not | | will | he | |
| she | | | she | | | | she | |
| it | | | it | | | | it | |
| you | | | you | | | | you | |
| they | | | they | | | | they | |

USAGE

The Future Perfect Tense denotes an action viewed as completed before a definite future moment indicated by an adverbial with the preposition 'by' or by another future action. It may also denote a future action covering a certain period of time up to or including the given future moment (with stative verbs, i. e. verbs not used in the Continuous aspect).

I think she'll have finished the essay by Monday.

By the time you get back Mike will have left.

He'll have been in this business for five years by next summer.

G. The Future Perfect Continuous (Progressive)

FORMATION

The Future Perfect Continuous (Progressive) tense is formed with the help of the Future Perfect Tense of *the auxiliary verb to be* and the Present Participle of *the main verb*.

Table 12

| Affirmative | | | Negative | | | Interrogative | | |
|-------------|----------------|---------|----------|--------------------------------|---------|---------------|------|-----------|
| I | shall/will | | I | shall not | | shall | I | |
| we | have been | | we | have been / will not have been | | | we | |
| he | | working | he | | working | | | have been |
| she | will have been | | she | will not have been | | will | he | working? |
| it | | | it | | | | she | |
| you | | | you | | | | it | |
| they | | | they | | | | you | |
| | | | | | | | they | |

USAGE

The Future Perfect Continuous (Progressive) tense-form denotes an action ***lasting for a period of time up to or including a certain future moment***. This future moment can be indicated by an adverbial with the preposition 'by' or by another future action. As with all the perfect continuous tenses the Future Perfect Continuous is preferred to the Future Perfect when the speaker wants to emphasize *the progressive character of an action*.

By five o'clock I'll have been doing this crossword puzzle for two hours.

By the time he arrives in London Max will have been driving for nearly five hours.

Compare the use of the different tense-forms to express future actions in English.

1. If you come tonight, I am sure you ***'ll have*** much fun.

2. It's Jane's birthday in August. She ***will be*** sixteen.

3. Phew! It's hot here. - Yes, it is. ***I'll turn*** on the air conditioning.

4. She said she ***would go*** to college if she ***did*** well in her exams.

5. I think she'll ***have heard*** all about it by the time

I see her. 6. I ***am going*** to take my driving test on Wednesday.

7. Take a warm coat. It's very cloudy. I think it ***is going*** to snow.

8. Our guests ***arrive*** by the 11.50 train.

9. They ***are opening*** an exhibition here next year.

10. How long ***will you have been studying*** English by the end of the year?

PRACTICE

1. Open the brackets using an appropriate Future tense where necessary.

A.

1. I (*take*) my sun-glasses in case it is sunny.

2. I don't think I can join you because my aunt and uncle (*stay*) with us this weekend.

3. You don't work in class! I (*phone*) your mother about this.

4. I (*watch*) television from eight o'clock to midnight.

5. When you (*repair*) my bike, Daddy? - I (*do*) it tomorrow if I have time.

6. It's so crowded in here. I think, I (*faint*). - I (*take*) you outside for a while.

7. I don't know when the concert (*be*) over.

8. If he doesn't come I (*be*) upset.

9. By the end of the summer he (*teach*) me to work with the computer.

10. Have a good time in Italy! - Thanks. I (*send*) you a postcard.

11. I think you (*like*) Nick when you meet him.

12. I (*cook*) spaghetti in case you get hungry.

13. I feel terrible. I think I (*have*) to go to bed.

14. This is an excellent machine which (*give*) you many years of service.

15. They (*move*) to a new flat next week.

16. This time tomorrow I (*lie*) on the beach.

17. If you ask I'm sure he (*offer*) to help.

18. What you (*do*) tomorrow evening?

19. We (*visit*) Vienna on Tuesday, then (*go*) to Paris on Wednesday and only afterwards we (*spend*) a few days in London.

20. Either you keep quiet or I (*have*) to ask you to leave.

21. We both hope that your leg (*be*) better in a couple of weeks and you (*be able*) to come to the wedding.

22. I never thought Jack (*be*) so much upset.

23. I (*have*) another English lesson this week.
24. I (*see*) you at the conference.
25. The bus (*leave*) at eight o'clock on Monday morning.
26. We (*go*) to visit Estonia this summer. We've already received the visas.
27. As soon as I (*hear*) the results I (*let*) you know.
28. Supposing it (*snow*). What we (*do*)'?
29. Look at the sun! It (*go*) to be a hot day tomorrow.
30. When they (*find out*) about this, there (*be*) trouble. 31. I was sure he (*be late*).
32. When the train (*arrive*) tomorrow night?
33. He felt that he (*have*) to count on himself only.
34. They told us they (*go*) to the States in three weeks.
35. You (*work*) late tomorrow night?
36. This parcel looks heavy. I (*take*) it to the post office for you.
37. Can you meet Jack at the station, please? He (*arrive*) at nine o'clock on the train from Oxford.
38. Quick! The museum (*close*) in a quarter of an hour.
39. It is still raining so I think I (*have*) to take an umbrella.
40. They assured us that we (*not/regret*) if we (*join*) them in the disco.
41. You (*have*) to stay at home until you (*get*) rid of your bad cough.
42. According to the weather forecast snow (*fall*) by the end of December.
43. Autumn has come. The trees (*lose*) their leaves in a few weeks.
44. They (*not/go*) to the football match tomorrow, because they (*work*) at that time.
45. He told me that when he (*be*) in Japan for five years he (*write*) a book.
46. By the time you (*get*) back, Simon (*leave*).
47. Please, don't wear indoor shoes in the gymnasium, or you (*damage*) the floor.
48. What you (*say*) if you (*see*) her?
49. The Stones (*be*) married for thirty years in May.
50. I have to be back at 3.30, so I (*leave*) before lunch.
51. By the end of the month she (*work*) in this company for three years.
52. Why don't you come with us? We (*go*) to have a lot of fun.
53. I (*take*) my exams on Monday so I think I (*stay*) in on Saturday night.
54. The children (*be*) really hungry when they (*get*) home because they (*run*) around all afternoon without any food.
55. Why don't you come round at 9 o'clock? The children (*go*) to bed at that time so it (*be*) nice and peaceful.
56. I (*not/go*) to speak to her until she (*apologize*).
57. Martin asked me if I (*help*) him with English.
58. We (*drive*) over five hundred kilometres by the time we (*reach*) the border.
59. You (*be*) sick if you (*eat*) more chocolate.
60. Look out! We (*go*) to hit the car in front.
61. Don't phone too early because I (*put*) the baby to bed.
62. By the time I (*qualify*) I (*study*) law for six years.
63. He was not quite sure when his parents (*come*) home.
64. Bob didn't know if the time-table for the next week (*change*).
65. By the time you (*get*) back, all the food (*go*).
66. You (*not/be*) able to enter the building if you (*not/have*) your identity card.
67. The doctor told Carol that a week in the country (*make*) her feel better.
68. When I (*learn*) a thousand English words, I (*be*) able to read a newspaper?
69. We (*return*) the reference material to the check-out-desk after we (*examine*) it.
70. Tom promised that he (*phone*) us again at the weekend.
71. The film probably (*not/finish*) until midnight.
72. We were anxious if the police (*find*) the criminal.
73. Hopefully she (*cook*) dinner for us by the time we (*get*) home.
74. I'm sure if we don't get there before seven they (*eat and drink*) everything.
75. I hope you (*not/forget*) your promise by tomorrow.
76. You (*see*) Nick tomorrow by any chance?
77. I'm sure you (*recover*) by then from the shock of meeting Jason here.
78. I (*stay*) up late tonight to watch a film on television.
79. By Christmas I (*work*) in this office for ten years.
80. A new video shop (*open*) today. I (*meet*) my friends there this afternoon.

B.

A: What you (*do*) tonight?

B: I (*try*) to finish my homework because I (*go*) to my cousin's wedding on Saturday and I (*not/be able*) to do it then.

A: What time the wedding (*start*) on Saturday?

B: The ceremony (*begin*) at 2 o'clock, then I (*go*) to the party in the evening.

A: (*be*) any of your friends there?

B: Well, my cousin says I can bring a friend. You (*do*) anything on Saturday night?

A: No, but I (*feel*) shy if I don't know anyone.

B: Never mind. It (*be*) a big party and I'm sure you (*have*) a great time.

A: O.K., then. Thanks very much.

C.

Dear Mum,

by the time you receive this letter I (*finish*) my final exam and, whether they went well or not, I (*celebrate*). I (*start*) looking for a job at the end of the summer because I (*go*) on holiday around Europe for a month, starting next week. Sue (*probably/come*) with me, although she's not sure yet. If she does, I'm sure we (*have*) a great time. I (*see*) her this evening, as usual, so I expect she (*tell*) me her decision then. Anyway, my first exam (*start*) at 9 o'clock tomorrow so I (*drive*) down to the library to do some last-minute revision. Even though I (*study*) Russian for four years by the time these exams are over, I feel I've still got a lot to learn about the language. Give my love to Sam and Rover.

Yours, Jason

D.

Dear Debbie,

since you want to know what I (*do*) next week, I thought I (*write*) and let you know. It (*be*) a very busy week. On Monday I (*go*) to York. I probably (*be*) there for three days and by Wednesday I (*meet*) every important artist in the town. If everything goes well, I (*go*) to Newcastle on Thursday morning. There I (*meet*) the chairman of the Arts Council. Then on Friday and Saturday I (*visit*) several small towns in the area to see what their galleries are like. By Sunday I (*travel*) for days and I imagine I (*be*) very tired. So it looks like I (*not/come*) to your party on Sunday night. Sorry! I hope you (*invite*) me to the next one. Give my love to Mike.

Love, Susan

1.7. MISCELLANEOUS PRACTICE ON THE USE OF THE VARIOUS TENSE-FORMS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

1. Present Simple/Present Continuous

I work in a large office with about thirty other people, most of whom I (*know*) quite well. We (*spend*) most of the day together, so we have all become friends. In fact, most of my colleagues are so interesting, that I (*think*) of writing a book about them!

Take Helen Watson, for example. Helen (*run*) the accounts department. At the moment she (*go out*) with Keith Ballantine, one of the sales representatives, and they (*seem*) very happy together. But everyone except Helen apparently (*know*) that Keith always (*make*) eyes at Susan Porter. But I (*happen*) to know that Susan (*dislike*) Keith. I can't stand people who (*apologise*) all the time!' she said to me. 'And besides, I know he (*deceive*) poor Helen. He (*see*) Betty Wills from the overseas department'. And plenty of other interesting things (*go on*). For instance, every week money (*disappear*) from the penny cashbox. When you (*realize*) that someone in your office is a thief, it (*upset*) you at first. But I also (*try*) to catch whoever it is before the police are called in. I'm not going to tell you who I (*suspect*). Well, not yet anyway!

2. Present Simple/Present Continuous

Dear Aunt Ruby,

I just (*write*) to tell you how much I (*appreciate*) the money you sent me, and to tell you how I (*get*) on in my first term at college. I (*study*) very hard but at the moment I (*spend*) a lot of time just making friends. I still (*stay*) with my friend Jean and I (*look*) for somewhere of my own to live. Only a few of the first-year students (*live*) in college here and I (*seem*) to be spending a lot of time travelling backwards and forwards. I (*go*) to lectures every morning and most afternoons I (*study*) in the library. In fact I (*write*) this letter instead of an essay on 'Macbeth'. I (*think*) I'll buy some new clothes with the money you sent. Everything (*cost*) a lot here, and I (*save*) to buy a winter coat. It (*get*) really cold here in the evenings. I (*know*) lots of other students and generally speaking we (*have*) quite a good time socially! I also (*learn*)

to drive.

See you shortly.

Sue

3. Present Simple/Past Simple/Future Simple/Present Continuous/Present Perfect

Dear Mr. Harrison,

James (*come*) back to school on Monday and my husband (*ask*) me to explain the situation to you. James (*recover*) just from his gripe, but the doctor (*tell*) me yesterday to keep him home for a few more days to be on the safe side. We hope he (*not/miss*) anything important since the term (*begin*).

We would like to ask you to watch over him for a while and not to let him take part in games or gymnastics for a week until he (*be*) well again. James (*be*) so keen on games that he (*try*) to play before he (*be*) fit enough unless someone (*keep*) an eye on him.

We (*provide*) him with all the clothes on the list except the red athletics vests and the blue shorts. He already (*grow*) out of last year's pair, but we only (*discover*) this yesterday and the local shop (*not/have*) any in stock. I (*send*) them by post as soon as I (*buy*) some. We (*be*) very happy that James (*take*) to boarding-school life so well last year and

we trust he (*continue*) to be happy this year. We both (*be*) very grateful to you for being so helpful last year and look forward to having another talk with you when we (*come*) to the parent-teacher meeting next month.

Yours sincerely, K. Williams

**4. Present Simple/Past Simple/Future Simple/
Present Continuous/Present Perfect**

Dear Ashton,

I'm sorry I (*not/write*) to you for so long, but I (*be*) very busy lately. All last month I (*have*) exams and (*have*) to study very hard.

Anyway I (*stop*) studying now, and I (*wait*) for my exam results. As you see from my letter, my address (*change*) and I (*live*) in Leeds now.

My family (*move*) here three months ago. I hope when you (*come*) to Britain in the summer, you (*visit*) me. I (*be*) at home till the middle of August. Then I (*go*) on holiday to Scotland.

Hope to hear from you shortly.

Love,

Sarah

**5. Present Simple/Past Simple/Present Perfect/
Present Perfect Continuous**

My wife and I (*live*) in our present house in the country for five years. We (*move*) here after our second child (*be*) born. We (*live*) in town for ten years, and then (*decide*) that as soon as we could afford it we (*move*) away from the smoke and the noise of the city centre, which we finally (*do*) in 1985. We never (*regret*) it. We (*be*) reminded of the wisdom of our decision every morning when we (*draw*) the curtains to see open fields stretching before us. When the children (*have*) breakfast they (*rush*) outside to play which they (*do*) whatever the weather.

6. Present Simple/Future Simple/Present Continuous/Present Perfect

Actually we (*think*) of moving. My wife (*accept*) a new job which she (*start*) next month. As soon as she (*start*) she (*have*) a journey of fifteen miles there and back and I (*not/ think*) that she (*realize*) just how tiring this business (*be*). I already (*decide*) that I (*get*) in touch with some estate agents. I (*not/feel*) happy until we (*find*) a house closer to my wife's job. I wonder what the children (*say*) when they (*hear*) that we (*move*).

**7. Present Simple/Past Simple/Future Simple/
Present Continuous/Present Perfect/Present**

Perfect Continuous

Dear Ann,

I (*receive*) your letter about two weeks ago and (*try*) to find time to write you back ever since. I (*be*) very busy lately. For the past two weeks I (*have*) four tests, and I (*have*) another test next week. In addition, a friend (*stay*) with me since last Thursday. She (*be*) fond of sightseeing, so we (*spend*) a lot of time visiting some of the interesting places here. Between showing her the city and studying for my exams, I barely (*have*) enough time to breathe. Right now it (*be*) 3 a.m. and I (*sit*) here for five hours doing my studying. My friend's plane (*leave*) at 6.05, so I (*decide*) not to go to bed. That's why I (*write*) to you at such an early hour in the day. I (*get*) a little sleepy, but I would rather stay up. I (*take*) a nap after I (*get*) back from taking her to the airport.

How you (*get*) along? How your classes (*go*)? Please, write soon.

Love,

Mary

**8. Present Simple/Past Simple/Present Continuous/
Past Continuous/Present Perfect/Present Perfect Continuous**

You (*hear*) the latest news? Jane (*get*) married soon! When I first (*hear*) about it, two days ago, I (*ring*) her up to congratulate her. 'We (*think*) about it for a long time', she said, 'but we only (*make*) up our minds recently. We (*quarrel*) so many times since we first (*start*) to go out together, but we always (*make*) it up. You (*remember*) that Mark (*go*) to the USA two years ago? And all the time he (*work*) there, I (*go*) out with someone else but I (*know*) Mark (*be*) the person I really (*love*). Since he (*come*) back we (*not/quarrel*), so we (*think*) we'll be happy. He (*live*) quite near me now, so we (*see*) more of each other. And frankly speaking we (*grow*) more tolerant of each other's faults lately. We (*not/have*) an argument since the day before yesterday!'

**9. Present Simple/Past Simple/Present Continuous/
Past Continuous/Present Perfect/Present Perfect Continuous**

-What you (*do*) with yourself lately? I (*not/see*) you for over a month.

-I (*be*) to Stockholm since I last (*see*) you.

- Really? How long you (*be*) there and what you (*do*)!

- Nearly three weeks. I (*do*) some research at the Royal Library. I think I already (*tell*) you that I (*work*) on a book about Scandinavia.

-Yes. How it (*go*)!

- Not so bad. I (*hope*) to have it in the hands of the publisher by the end of the year.

**10. Present Simple/Past Simple/Present
Continuous/Past Continuous/Present
Perfect/Present Perfect Continuous**

Yes, I'm at Georgina's house this evening. What I *(do)* here? I *(baby-sit)*. She and her husband *(go)* to a party. Four - four children. They *(be)* usually rather wild. I *(baby-sit)* here once when they all *(start)* screaming. But they *(be)* very good at the moment. I can see the youngest now in the room next door. She *(eat)* a huge box of chocolates that Georgina *(give)* me before she *(leave)*. The others *(find)* a tin of paint and happily *(paint)* the walls of the kitchen. They *(assure)* me that they *(do)* this before and that their mother and father *(have)* no objection then. I only *(hope)* that they *(tell)* me the truth. One of them *(get)* himself in a bit of a mess. I *(try)* to clean him up with paint remover, but so far without much success.

77. Present Simple/Past Simple/Present

Continuous/Past Continuous/Present Perfect/Past

Perfect/Past Perfect Continuous

Brenda Pearl *(join)* our firm ten years ago. She *(work)* for the previous five years with an advertising company and *(acquire)* much useful experience. For the first eight years with us she *(work)* in the Sales Department and *(work)* there when I *(become)* Managing Director. Since then she *(work)* as my personal assistant and *(prove)* herself to be outstandingly capable on many occasions. She *(work)* on the top floor, in an office next to mine, but at the moment she *(work)* in London on a special assignment.

72. Past Simple/Past Continuous/Past Perfect

Last week I *(have)* a funny experience. I *(be)* on my own in the house because my husband *(go away)* on a business trip.

The first evening I *(feel)* rather tired as I *(spend)* the day shopping and cleaning. After supper I *(watch)* television for a while and then *(decide)* to go to bed early. I just *(go)* to lie down when I *(hear)* the sounds of men's voices, talking quietly. I *(be)* terrified. I *(get)* out of bed, and *(creep)* downstairs. The voices *(come)* from the sitting-room. I *(tremble)* all over. I slightly *(open)* the door and then *(laugh)* with relief. In my tiredness I *(forget)* to turn off the television...

13. Past Simple/Past Continuous/Past Perfect The Australian Salute

Before I *(visit)* Australia, an Australian friend in London *(tell)* me that I *(learn)* the Australian salute there. 'What's that?' I *(ask)*. 'You *(find out)* when you *(get)* there', he *(say)*. I *(arrive)* in Sydney 2 weeks after my talk with the friend and *(stay)* at a nice hotel near a beautiful beach. I never *(visit)* Australia before and I *(enjoy)* my stay immensely. I *(swim)* every day and *(die)* in the sun. One day an Australian friend *(suggest)* a tour into 'the bush'*. I *(agree)* at once. The first thing I *(notice)* when we *(be)* in the bush *(be)* the flies. After a while I *(remember)* the conversation I *(have)* in London before I *(come)* there. 'What's the Australian salute?' I *(ask)* suddenly, as I *(wave)* my right arm to keep the flies away. «That's it!» my friend *(say)*, as he *(wave)* back!

14. Past Simple/Past Continuous/Past Perfect/Past Perfect Continuous

I *(go)* to London for the first time in 1990 when I *(be)* just a child. My parents *(be)* already there many times so they *(know)* the city well. But they never *(be)* there with a child.

so they saw a different side of London with me. We *(go)* out every day and *(have)* a fantastic time. My parents *(study)* English for many years so they *(have)* no difficulty with the language. It *(rain)* while we *(be)* there but we *(pack)* all our waterproof clothes so it *(be)* no problem. When the time *(come)* to leave, I *(feel)* quite sad because I *(have)* such a good time.

15. Past Simple/Past Continuous/Past Perfect

This time last year I *(cycle)* in the rain along a country road in France with a friend of mine. We *(decide)* to go on a cycling holiday in Normandy. Neither of us *(be)* to France before, but we *(know)* some French from our time at school and we *(manage)* to brush up on the basics. Now we *(wonder)* if we *(make)* the right decision. We *(plan)* our route carefully in advance, but we *(forget)* one important thing, the weather. It *(rain)* solidly since our arrival and that night we *(end up)* sleeping in the waiting room at a railway station. Then the next morning as we *(ride)* down a steep hill my bike *(skid)* on the wet road and I *(fall off)*. I *(realize)* immediately that I *(break)* my arm, and after a visit to the local hospital I *(catch)* the next train to Calais for the ferry home. Unfortunately my parents *(not/expect)* me home for a fortnight, and *(go)* away on holiday. So I *(spend)* a miserable couple of weeks alone, reading «Teach Yourself French».

16. Present Simple/Past Simple/Future Simple/

Present Perfect/Past Perfect/Past

Perfect Continuous

Yesterday I *(receive)* a phone call from an old friend who I *(not/hear)* from for months. I *(ask)* him what he *(do)* lately, and he told me that he *(spend)* the past three months sailing around the world on an old-fashioned sailing ship. I always

(love) everything to do with the sea, so I was very excited to hear that he *(manage)* to do something so thrilling. I *(ask)* him if we *(can)* get together soon and *(make)* him promise that he *(bring)* all the photos he *(take)*. When he *(come)* next week, I'll expect him to tell me exactly what the trip *(be)* like.

17. Past Simple/Present Continuous/Present Perfect/Past Perfect/Past Perfect Continuous

Yesterday evening Sally *(miss)* the last bus home because she *(work)* late at the office, so she *(decide)* to get a taxi. She *(get)* into the first one that *(come)* along, but immediately *(regret)* that she *(do)* so, because the driver *(seem)* a bit crazy. After he *(go)* through the third red light at top speed Sally said, 'You *(drive)* a bit too fast. Please slow down. I *(be)* in two car accidents already in my life'. 'That's nothing', *(reply)* the driver. 'I *(be)* in over a hundred!'

18. Present Simple/Past Simple/Past Continuous/ Past Perfect/Past Perfect Continuous

I (*walk*) down the street the other day when I (*bump*) into an old friend of mine. We (*be*) friends at university but we (*lose*) touch. We (*talk*) for a few minutes and he (*tell*) me that he (*work*) with computers for the past two years. I (*can*) hardly believe it; he (*do*) a drama degree at university and (*act*) in several films when he was younger. It (*be*) funny how things (*turn out*) sometimes.

1.8. THE USE OF TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

FORMATION

The Passive voice is formed with the help of the *auxiliary be* in the appropriate form and *the Past Participle of the main verb* (see Table 13).

| Tense | Structure | Example |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Present Simple | am/are/is + Past Participle | English <i>is spoken</i> here. |
| Past Simple | was/were + Past Participle | His leg <i>was hurt</i> in an accident. |
| Future Simple | shall/will + Past Participle | The matter <i>will be discussed</i> tomorrow. |
| Present Cont. | am/are/is being + Past Participle | She <i>is being interviewed</i> now. |
| Past Continuous | was/were being + Past Participle | I felt I <i>was being watched</i> . |
| Present Perfect | have/has been + Past Participle | My brother <i>has never been beaten</i> in tennis. |
| Past Perfect | had been + Past Participle | The bridge <i>had been built</i> by winter time. |
| Future Perfect | will have been + Past Participle | Everything <i>will have been done</i> by Tuesday. |

Note 1: Future Continuous Passive (*will be being* + *Past Participle*) and Perfect Continuous Passive (*have been being* + *Past Participle*, etc.) are unusual and are not normally used. Note 2: Passive Infinitives are used with 'to' or without 'to' in the same way as Active Infinitives: e.g.

The pupils must be warned about the change in the time-table. The letter doesn't have to be sent tomorrow.

USAGE

The use of the verb-tenses in *the passive voice* is determined by the same principles as in the active voice. Yet a passive construction is not merely a transformation of the active one. It is made to show that *the subject of a sentence is not the*

doer of the action but the receiver of it. Hence the passive

voice has its own uses marked by the shift of focus from the doer of the action to the action itself which is typical of more formal speech.

Customers are requested to ask for a receipt. When were you told about the new rules? The floor is filthy. It must be scrubbed.

PRACTICE

1. Open the brackets using the appropriate passive forms.

- The Tower of London formerly (*use*) as a prison.
- Progress (*make*) every day in the world of science.
- He saw that the table (*push*) into the corner.
- Empty bottles must (*throw away*), the sooner the better.
- Photographs (*take*) after the ceremony.
- I never (*speak to*) like that before.
- Ann (*show*) how to bath a baby by her elder sister.
- A big battle (*fight*) here 200 years ago.
- These books must not (*take*) away from the reading-room.
- Milk (*use*) for making butter and cheese.
- In some countries women still (*deny*) the right to vote.
- My uncle recently (*make*) a captain.
- She fell into the water because she (*push*).
- We (*suppose*) to take your remark seriously?
- They say she (*interview*) for the job tomorrow.
- The newspaper (*deliver*) before I got up this morning.
- Milk can (*buy*) at the shop on the corner.
- We (*tell*) there (*be*) a private bathroom for every room.

19. Next week we (*tell*) who will be in charge of the department.
20. I phoned the police when I found out that my passport (*steal*).
21. A new plug for the television must (*buy*).
22. Smoking (*not/allow*) in this part of the building.
23. I (*tell*) that fifty people (*invite*) to the reception.
24. The National Gallery (*restore*) at the moment.
25. During the Gulf War many oil wells in Kuwait (*damage*).
26. He (*arrest*) by a security guide, who later admitted he had made a mistake.
27. When I entered the room Richard still (*examine*).
28. I wonder who else is going (*to invite*).
29. Oranges usually (*treat*) with wax and then (*store*) in large boxes.
30. We can't take the car yet: it still (*repair*).
31. The windows are really dirty: they (*not/clean*) for years,
32. Do you need (*wake*) up in the morning?
33. The local cinema (*close down*) three years ago.
34. Very few typewriters (*sell*) these days.

1.9. MISCELLANEOUS PRACTICE ON THE USE OF THE VARIOUS TENSE-FORMS IN THE ACTIVE/PASSIVE VOICE

1. Bernard and Francis Bashet (*be*) brothers. They (*live*) in Paris and (*work*) with new sounds and shapes for making music. But they always (*not/do*) this, though; for a long time Bernard (*manage*) a factory and Francis (*run*) a business in Argentina. Then about 30 years ago they (*take*) their savings and (*begin*) the work they (*do*) now. First they (*learn*) about how classical musical instruments (*make*). And since that time they (*begin*) inventing their own musical instruments. Now their lives (*be*) quite varied. They still (*invent*) new instruments; but Bernard recently (*start*) working with children as well. He (*help*) them to discover music without having to read written notes. He and Francis sometimes (*travel*) too giving concerts on their instruments or setting up exhibitions. Bernard's main complaint? The telephone. 'When an artist (*work*)', he said, 'and he (*have*) to run to the telephone, something (*break*) inside. I (*agree*) with the sculptor who once (*say*) that freedom for an artist (*mean*) having a secretary'.

2. It (*rain*) when we (*arrive*) at the coast but by midday the rain (*stop*). 'We (*think*) the rain (*last*) all day and we (*be*) very glad it (*not/do*) because we (*want*) to do swimming. We (*find*) a cafe where we (*offer*) a nice meal. By the time we (*finish*) lunch the sun (*come*) out and the temperature (*rise*) to 30 degrees. We all (*run*) down to the beach and after we (*change*) into our swimming things we (*dive*) in the sea.

3. I remember going on holiday abroad for the first time. I just (*leave*) school. I (*study*) very hard for my final exams. And I (*feel*) that I (*need*) a holiday. A friend of mine (*want*) to come as well so we (*look*) at some brochures from the travel agent's. We (*read*) for about an hour when my friend (*find*) the perfect holiday - two weeks in Hawaii. We (*be*) very excited about it. Finally the day of our holiday (*arrive*). We just (*leave*) the house when the phone (*ring*). I (*run*) back into the house, but the phone (*stop*) by the time I (*reach*) it. When we (*arrive*) at the airport we (*learn*) that our flight (*delay*) for six hours. We (*get*) up very early and rushed to the airport, all for nothing.

4. As soon as little Michelle (*take*) to hospital her ankle (*X-ray*) and the X-ray plates (*give*) to the doctor. He (*examine*) her ankle thoroughly and (*decide*) that it (*have*) to be put in plaster at once. Although her ankle (*be*) painful, she (*not/cry*) and everybody (*say*) how brave the girl (*be*). Now Michelle's ankle gradually (*get*) better and the doctor just (*tell*) her mother that he (*be*) able to take off the plaster next Monday. Then she (*send*) home if everything (*be*) all right.

5. One morning last week I (*realize*) that my bike (*steal*) from my garden. I (*phone*) the police and two officers (*come*) to my house the next day. I (*ask*) if I (*see*) or (*hear*) anything. I (*tell*) them I (*be*) out that evening, and (*not/notice*) anything suspicious when I (*return*) home.

Before the policemen (*leave*) they (*tell*) me that I (*inform*) as soon as the bike (*find*). However, there (*be*) a happy ending to this story. In the evening I (*phone*) by a friend of mine. «By the way,» she (*say*), «if you (*need*) your bike, I (*bring*) it back this afternoon. I (*borrow*) it a couple of days ago.»

6. Dear Mum and Dad,

Just a quick note as I (*be*) in a tearing hurry. Guess what - I just (*interview*) by a journalist who (*ask*) me lots of questions about how I (*get*) on here in America. There (*go*) to be an article about me in the local paper. Fame at last! I (*send*) you a copy as soon as it (*come*) out. Anyway, the journalist (*wonder*) if I (*enjoy*) my stay and how long I (*be*) in the States. He also (*ask*) me a rather embarrassing question: 'You (*like*) American food?' You know I can't stand it! He also (*want*) to know why I (*come*) to the States and what I (*remember*) most and best about the country when I (*come*) back home. I (*find*) those questions difficult to answer as I only (*be*) here two weeks. Don't forget to show the article to everyone!

Love,

Andrej

7. With about 200.000 words in current usage, English (*regard*) as the richest of the world's languages. Few other languages can match this word power. English (*owe*) its exceptionally large vocabulary to its ability to borrow and absorb words from outside. *Atomic*, *jeans*, *khaki* and *sputnik* (*be*) just a few of the many words that (*come*) into use quite recently. They (*take*) or (*adopt*) from Italian, Hindi, Greek and Russian.

This process of borrowing words from other languages (*go*) on for more than 1000 years. When the Normans (*cross*) over from France to conquer England in 1066, most of the English people (*speak*) Old English, or Anglo-Saxon - a language of about 30.000 words. The Normans (*speak*) a language that (*be*) a mixture of Latin and French. The Normans (*give*) us '*mansion, city, place*', the Anglo-Saxons - '*king and town*'. Latin and Greek (*be*) a fruitful source of vocabulary since the 16th century. The Latin words *mini, maxi* and the Greek word *micro* (*become*) popular adjectives to describe everything from bikes to fashions.

8. It (*be*) last May while we (*take*) our annual holiday in Brighton that our house (*break*) into. All our TV and video equipment (*steal*), but the worst thing of all (*he*) that the final draft of my husband's latest novel (*tear*) into pieces. Of course you (*hear*) about people who (*have*) their properties vandalized and whose priceless possessions (*take*), but it (*be*) a terrible shock, when it (*happen*) to you, when you know that your home (*invade*) and that your most intimate belongings (*examine*) by strangers.

9. Case notes of a nurse

Ward Sister Sarah Browne is responsible for the welfare of 28 patients on two wards at the London hospital where she (*work*) for the last 6 years. She (*direct*) a staff of 12 working in three shifts. There are also as many as 15 student nurses who (*assign*) to the ward at any one time. It (*calculate*), she says, that 200 people - doctors, nurses, visitors, students - (*move*) through her general and acute medical ward in a day. Sister Browne, who is 39, (*qualify*) as a nurse 20 years ago. She (*work*) as a clinical teacher and (*do*) research into psychotherapy for former smokers. Her working week easily (*exceed*) the 37 hours she is supposed to work. 08.45 The morning report (*just/end*) and Sister Browne (*listen*) as a qualified nurse (*explain*) the insulin injection she is about to give to a diabetic patient. 09.38 Sister Browne (*chat*) by the bedside of an 85-year-old woman who (*wait*) for a place in a home for two and a half years. 11.33 Sister Browne (*just/interrupt*) by a telephone call. Whatever she (*do*), she finds herself being summoned to deal with queries and occasional emergencies. Whenever she (*enter*) a room, she (*switch*) on a light by the door to show staff and patients that she (*arrive*). All the nurses (*wear*) flat white shoes which are essential to lessen the strain of being on their feet virtually all day. The floors are hard but Sister Browne says she (*get used*) to them and hardly (*notice*) her aching feet any more.

12.18 Sister Browne (*have*) a kind word with an elderly patient who (*recently/admit*) and is very concerned about her dog and four cats. Pets are a particular problem for elderly patients who (*live*) alone for some time.

15.01 Sister Browne (*joke*) with a patient who is about to (*take*) to another part of the hospital for an X-ray. The ward (*specialise*) in chest diseases and Sister Browne (*ban*) smoking.

15.55 Now that her shift nearly (*finish*) Sister Browne (*snatch*) a moment's rest before driving home. She will be up again at six tomorrow to do the same shift.

2. NODAL VERBS

2.1. CAN, COULD, BE ABLE

2.1.1. Study the following notes and examples.

Can combines the ideas of possibility and ability. *Be able* is possible instead of *can*, but *can* is more usual. *Can* has only two forms: *can* (present) and *could* (past). So *to be able to* do something is sometimes used to replace the missing forms.

With reference to the past *could* is used to say that someone had the general ability to do something. (*He could speak three foreign languages*). When it is necessary to emphasize that someone managed to do something in one particular situation, *was/were able to* is used. (*The fire spread quickly but everyone was able to escape*). The negative *couldn't* is possible in all situations.

She can (is able to) speak (two foreign languages (mental ability, capability)).

They spoke in low voices and she couldn't hear what they were talking about (physical ability).

You can buy paper and pencils at the stationer's (possibility).

I can't wait any longer. My class starts in 5 minutes (absence of possibility).

I could swim when I was 5.

David wasn't able to play in the match yesterday.

He had hurt his leg.

If you take a taxi you will be able to catch the train.

2.1.2. Insert *can* (*can't*), *could* (*couldn't*) or the appropriate form of *to be able to*.

1. I... play tennis in my youth, but I ... play it any more. 2. You ... buy powder and lipstick at the perfumer's. 3. If she has enough money, she ... go to the seaside. 4. I am afraid I... settle this problem till Friday. 5. The vase was so beautiful that I... help buying it. 6. My grandmother liked music. She ... play the piano very well. 7. The noise was deafening. I... hear anything. 8. The tennis match wasn't easy but I... win it. 9. He didn't want to come but in the end we ... persuade him. 10. I work hard at French. I hope I ... speak French fluently in a couple of months. 11. No wonder Jack ... get to college. He is so hardworking. 12. Mrs. Lawrence has to wear glasses. She ... see very well. 13. Paul felt much better on Sunday, and so he ... play in the match. 14. It was dark. We ... see a thing. 15. They were whispering so I... hear what they were saying very clearly. 16. I... buy that book because I didn't bring any money with me. 17. I'm sorry, but I won't come to the party on Saturday. 18. I... finish all the work you wanted me to do yesterday. 19. The manager wasn't in the office for very long, but we ... to speak to him for a few minutes. 20. On entering the house I ... smell something burning in the kitchen. 21. I am usually very good at tennis, but yesterday I ... beat my brother. 22. When we lived on the coast, we ... swim in the sea every day. 23. If you don't tell me what your problem is, I... help you. 24. I got home early last night, so I... watch my favourite programme on TV.

25. I ... eat anything when I was younger, but now I have to be more careful. 26. Fortunately he ... convince the police that he was innocent.

2.2. CAN, COULD, MAY, WOULD

2.2.1. Study the following notes and examples.

May, like *can*, denotes possibility.

You may find his number in the telephone book. *May*, *can* and *could* are used to request permission. *Can* is used informally to request permission, especially if the speaker is talking to someone she/he knows fairly well. It is usually not considered as polite as *may* or *could*, which are equally polite. *Would (you)* is also used to express a polite request. The difference between *Would (you)* and *Could (you)* is slight.

Would you ~ Do you want to do this, please? *Could you = Do you want to do this, please, and is it possible for you to do this?* *Would* also expresses an offer.

Would you like an ice-cream? Can (could) you do me a favour?

Can (could) you tell me the way to the nearest post-office?

Can (could, may) I use your phone? Can (could, may) I borrow your dictionary? - Yes, of course. (Certainly)

Can (may) I keep the dictionary till Monday? - No, you may not. (I am afraid not) Would you like a cup of coffee?

Would you pass me the salt, please?

2.2.2. Turn instructions into polite requests.

1. Give me your full name.
2. I can't hear you very well. Speak up.
3. Give me a little more time.
4. Tell me when you are ready.
5. Do the shopping on your way home.
6. Tell them that I called.
7. Give me some advice about buying a computer.
8. Wait here for just a minute.
9. Finish the work by yourself.

2.2.3. Complete the situation asking people to do something, asking for permission to do something or offering something.

1. The person in the next room has some music on very loud. How do you ask him politely to turn it down? (...?)
2. You are at a friend's. You want to make a phone call. (...?)
3. You need a clean sheet of paper. The student sitting next to you has got one. (...?)
4. Your neighbour is going out for a walk. You want to ask her to post a letter. (...?)
5. A friend of yours has dropped in for a chat. You offer her some tea or coffee. (...?)
6. You are carrying a tray. Ask someone to open the door for you. (...?)
7. Your teacher has just explained a new grammar rule. You want to ask her a question. (...?)
8. A friend from another city phones to tell you she will be coming to your town for two weeks next month. You want her to stay with you.

2.3. MUST, HAVE TO, TO BE TO

2.3.1. Study the following notes and examples.

Must and *have to* both express necessity or obligation. *Must* is usually stronger than *have to* and can indicate urgency. On the other hand, *must* is used to express necessity from the speaker's point of view while *have to* expresses necessity imposed by circumstances and is rendered into Russian as *приходится, вынужден*.

I must write to Ann. I haven't written to her for ages. Ann's eyes are not very good. She has to wear glasses.

In negative sentences *to have to* denotes absence of necessity. *It's my day off so I didn't have to get up early.*

To be to is used to express obligation resulting from an arrangement. *(We are to discuss it next week).*

You work too much. You must have a rest. You mustn't smoke here. It's a non-smoking compartment.

I had to take a taxi to be in time for the appointment. I didn't have to walk. A friend of mine gave me a lift. Did you have to change trains? You don't have to stay late. The work isn't urgent. We are to sign the contract on Tuesday.

2.3.2. Complete the sentences with the modal verbs *must have to* or *to be to* in the correct form.

1. We ... leave yet. We've got plenty of time.
2. She seems to be in trouble. We ... help her.
3. Our luggage is very heavy. We ... take a porter.
4. When you come to London again, you ... come and see us.
5. The child hasn't recovered yet. It ... stay in bed for another day.
6. They have a lot of work at the office so she ... work on Saturdays.
7. You ... tell it to anyone. It's a secret.
8. He is very rich so he ... earn his living.
9. Come on. We ... be late.
10. These old houses ... be pulled down in a few months.
11. The conference ... open in a few days.
12. You really ... make less noise. I'm trying to concentrate.
13. My brother is a milkman. He ... get up very early.
14. The doctor says you ... take these tablets three times a day.
15. Mother is away so we ... look after ourselves.
16. The car broke down so we ... walk.
17. Soldiers ... disobey a superior officer.
18. How often you ... buy petrol for the car?
19. I ... speak Italian very much since I came to Rome. Everyone keeps talking to me in English.
20. Your temperature is a little high. You ... stay in bed for the next few days.
21. When a fire broke everyone ... leave the building.
22. At present there is disagreement over how children ... be taught to be polite.
23. They ... announce the winners on April 12th. It's scheduled.
24. I simply ... have a holiday', said Jean. I haven't had one for three years'.
25. I'm getting fat. I really ...

try to lose some weight, like the doctor said.

2.4. MUSTN'T AND NEEDN'T

2.4.1. Study the following examples.

*The baby is asleep. You **mustn't** shout.*

*You **needn't** say anything if you don't want to.*

*I can hear you quite well. You **needn't** shout. **Must I** return the books today? - No, you **needn't**. You can do it tomorrow.*

***Must I** return the books today? - Yes, you **must**. He has left the army and **doesn't need to** wear a uniform any more.*

Note: **Must not** is used to express prohibition (*Do not do this!*)- **Need not** + **the simple form of a verb** is used to express lack of necessity.

2.4.2. Complete the sentences with **mustn't** or **needn't**.

1. I've bought everything, so you ... go shopping. 2. She has recovered and ... stay in bed. 3. Tom gave me a letter to post. I... forget to post it. 4. Shall I turn on the light? - No, you It's still light in the room. 5. The work isn't urgent. You ... do it today. 6. Must he speak to the manager? - No, he.... The matter isn't very urgent. 7. The meeting is very important. We ... be late. 8. You ... take an umbrella. It isn't going to rain. 9. Look after the books, please. You ... lose them. 10. I... forget my keys or I won't get in. 11. You ... bring sandwiches. We can stop at a cafe. 12. You ... wear your best clothes. You can wear what you like. 13. You ... make any noise going into the house. It's very late and everybody's asleep. 14. My room is a mess, but I... clean it before I go out tonight. I can do it in the morning. 15. Bill is in the darkroom developing the negatives of the photos he took on his last trip to Peru. You ... open the door because the light will ruin the pictures. 16. You ... exert yourself. You're still not fully recovered from your surgery. 17. Thanks goodness we ... eat fish again tonight. Dad didn't catch any today. 18. He has retired. He ... work any more. 19. We ... check the figures again. I think they are right. 20. In this school pupils ... smoke. They ... wear school uniform, but they ... wear dirty clothes. 22. You ... take a jacket. It's rather warm. 23. Sally and Dave ... attend the meeting, but the sales staff... miss it, as several matters concern them.

2.5. MUST AND MAY

2.5.1. Study the following examples.

*You 've been travelling all day. You **must be** tired. (I am sure that you are tired). Ann isn't at home. She **may be** at the office. (Perhaps she is at her office)*

Note: **Must** is used to express a strong degree of certainty about a situation. **May** expresses uncertainty and doubt.

2.5.2. Complete the situations with **must** or **may**.

1. Do you know if David is at home? - He ... be in his office but I am not sure. 2. Are they British? - Yes, they ... be British. 3. That dress you bought yesterday is very good quality. It... be very expensive. 4. Where's Ann? - I don't know. She ... be at the library. She sometimes goes there after classes. 5. He's got a few cars, a yacht and a helicopter. He ... be very rich. 6. Do you know if Ann likes ice-cream? - She... but I am not sure. 7. Dave isn't answering the phone. He ... be out. 8. I had my keys a moment ago. They ... be here somewhere. 9. Is that a famous person over there in the middle of that crowd? - Yes, it... be. Everyone's trying to get her autograph. 10. Have you heard anything from Edd? Is he still in Africa? - He ... be, or he ... be already on his way home. I'm just not sure. 11. I hear Laura has been offered a job at a top computer firm. - That's wonderful. She ... very pleased. 12. Is that volcano dormant or active? - Active.

According to experts, it... erupt again in the very near future. 13. I've ought to call before we drop in on Peter and Mary. They -•• busy. 14. I hear Joe has received a scholarship and will be able to attend the university. - Wonderful. He ... be very happy to have the matter finally settled. 15. Isn't Margaret's daughter over 16? - She ... be. I saw her driving car, and you have to be at least 16 to get a driver's licence. 16. It can't be true. It ... be a lie. 17. This dog ... belong to Harry. It's got his address on its collar. 18. Where is Paula? - She ... be in the garden. I remember Father asking her to help him.

2.6. SHOULD AND OUGHT

2.6.1. Study the following notes and examples.

Should and **ought to** are very similar. They are both used to talk about obligation and duty, to give advice, and to say what we think it is right for people to do.

*You **ought to/should** read this story. It's great fun.*

There is sometimes a small difference. **Should** or **ought** are used when talking about one's own feelings, but **ought** is preferable when talking about 'outside' rules, laws, moral duties, etc.

*John **ought to** visit his parents more often.*

*You **should think** over this offer once more before rejecting it.*

*You 've been coughing a lot recently. You **shouldn't smoke** so much.*

*I think Tom **should accept** the job offer.*

*I don't think you **should work** so hard.*

*They **ought to ban** smoking in public places.*

*I **ought to do** more exercise. My doctor says I'm very unfit.*

2.6.2. Complete the situation giving your opinion about something or advising people to do or not to do

something.

1. Your friend has a bad toothache. Advise him to go to the dentist. (...)
2. Tell someone it's best they don't decide in a hurry. (...)
3. Your sister is complaining of a headache. Advise her to go for a walk. (...)
4. A friend of yours thinks she's overweight. Advise her to take regular exercise. (...)
5. Tell your brother it's best he doesn't spend all his wages as soon as he gets them. (...)
6. Your sister has spent a weekend at her friend's country house. You think it's the right thing for her to write a letter of thanks. (...)
7. A friend of yours says she's sorry for being rude to her parents. You think it's best she apologizes to them. (...)

2.7. MISCELLANEOUS PRACTICE

Complete the sentences using the correct form of modal verbs.

1. Don't you know cigarettes are bad for you? You ... smoke.
2. You... type the letter today. It's very urgent. But the report isn't so important. You ... type the report today.
3. I... stay late at the office tomorrow. We're very busy at the moment.
4. Each passenger ... take one bag onto the plane.
5. ... I borrow your ladder, please? - I'm sorry, I'm using it at the moment.
6. I learned to swim very early in my life. I... swim when I was three.
7. I... come and see you tomorrow. I'll be at work.
8. ... you like to visit the museum?
9. You worry too much. You ... take everything so seriously.
10. When I was young, I... work long hours. But children today... work hard-
11. We ... get up early, but we can if we want.
12. You wear your best clothes. You'll get them dirty.
13. Have you done this puzzle? - Yes, and I've got the same answer as you. It... be correct.
14. I'm going to do a parachute jump next week. - But you're seventy-three years old! You ...be mad!
15. The fence fell down in the storm. Luckily I... repair it myself.
16. ... you mind passing the sandwiches along, please? Thanks.
17. If you take your camera with you, you ... take some photos.
18. ... we have our room key, please? -Certainly, sir.
19. We ... invite Majorie. She's a wonderful company.
20. We... invite the Bells. They invited us last time.
21. The hot weather doesn't seem to bother you! - When I had my farm, I... work in the hot fields for hours.
22. I need some help with this table. ... you lift the other end, please?
23. Why are you so late? -I... take my aunt to the airport. The traffic was terrible!
24. I hear a dog barking. It ... be Rover, my neighbour's dog.
25. Do you hear that squeak? What is it? -I don't know. It... be a mouse. Isn't that what a mouse sounds like?
26. She often travels to Spain. Luckily, she speaks Spanish, so she ... rely on an interpreter when she's there.
27. You ... give your tropical fish too much food or they'll die.
28. ... you mind taking me down town on your way to work this morning?
29. If you want to make some new friends you ... join some clubs so you can meet people who have similar interests.
30. You ... finish your work on this project before you go on vacation. You'll probably lose your job if you don't.
31. My car is in a terrible condition. I ... get a new one before the police stop me.
32. He ... be at his cottage in the country, because I remember him asking me if I wanted to go with him.
33. You ... go into details unless people ask questions. But remember you ... give anyone the idea that their job is at risk.
34. People ... treat animals in a better way but they don't always do so.

3. THE ARTICLE IN ENGLISH

3.1. BASIC RULES

The article is a part of speech which is used before the noun and has the function of a noun determiner. A similar function is performed by possessive, demonstrative and indefinite pronouns. However, only one determiner can be used in English, i.e. either an article or a pronoun precedes the noun. As far as **the use** of article is concerned there are three possibilities in English: **the indefinite** article (**a/an**), **the definite** article (**the**) and **the absence** of article, or the so-called **zero** article.

My brother works in a large garage in Brighton.

Mary has always wanted to be a scientist.

Cars and buses are a major source of pollution in cities.

Did you enjoy the party you went to on Saturday?

You ought not to waste money on smoking.

The choice of the article depends, first of all, on the type and the form of the noun: *countable/uncountable, singular/plural* (see the table below).

Table 14*

| type of nouns | a/an | the | no article (zero article) |
|---|-------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| countable singular | a map | the map | — |
| countable plural | - | the maps | maps |
| uncountable (nouns of material, abstract nouns) | — | the water the music | water music |

* The table is taken from: Michael Swan. «Practical English Usage», Moscow. 1984. p. 66.

A. The Indefinite Article

The original meaning of *a/an - one* - explains why it is used only with countable nouns in the singular.

Here's a hundred pounds.

Don't me the plate as an ashtray.

The main function of the indefinite article is generally defined as **classifying**, i.e. referring a person, an animal, an object or a thing to a class of similar objects, things, etc.

This is a journal and that is a magazine.

A lawyer is a person who helps people with legal problems.

The classifying function is closely connected with the meaning of **indefiniteness** (*any representative* of a class, not a particular one) and **novelty** (this person, object, etc., is introduced in the context for the first time).

Last Sunday we found a small puppy in the park and brought it home.

I saw a pretty girl of about 20 in the corner of the room. Her face was unusually pale.

Somebody threw a large snowball at me as I was walking along the road.

As is seen from the given examples, a noun with the indefinite article often has one or more descriptive attributes preceding or sometimes following it. It must be pointed out that the **'zero article'** also has the meaning of indefiniteness and novelty, so whenever the situation requires the use of 'o/aл', but the type or the form of the noun (uncountable, countable plural) does not permit it, the **zero** article is used.

This car doesn't use petrol, it's battery-powered. Intelligence is something you are born with, not something you learn.

The typical uses of the **indefinite** and the **zero** articles are demonstrated by the following sentence-patterns:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. a predicative noun | Mr younger sister is a first-year student. Is it tea or coffee, waiter? They are experienced engineers. |
| 2. a noun-object not mentioned in the context (after 'have', 'have got', 'see', 'buy', 'eat', etc.) | I've got an envelope, but I haven't got a stamp. We went to the market to buy tomatoes and cucumbers. I never eat garlic. Are you interested in science? |
| 3. a singular or plural noun after 'there is (are)' | There is a bedroom to the right. There are apples and pears in the basket. While there is life - there is hope. |
| 4. exclamatory sentences beginning with 'what' | What a lovely day! What juicy oranges! What tender meat! |
| 5. after 'such' as an intensifying adjective | He is such a wise man! You shouldn't say such words! |

B. The Definite Article

The article *'the'* derives from the Old English demonstrative pronoun *'se'* (that), which accounts for **definiteness** as its basic meaning: both the speaker and the hearer know what is being talked about.

The definiteness of the thing, object, etc. arises from a) **an earlier mention** of the noun in the context.

Sue and Frank have got two children: a girl and a boy. The girl is a student and the boy is still at school.

A man came up to a policeman and asked him a question. The policeman didn't understand the question and so he asked the man to repeat it.

I've recently bought new jeans. The jeans cost me a pretty penny.

I found cheese and yogurt in the fridge. The cheese was absolutely stale.

b) **the presence of a specifying (particularizing) modifier**

(a prepositional phrase, an attributive clause, etc).

Who was the woman you were talking to just now? The house beyond the church was for sale.

c) **the uniqueness** of the object or group of objects denoted by the noun: *the sun, the moon, the earth, the world, the horizon, the equator; the Queen* (of this country), *the kitchen* (of this house), *the children* (belonging to a particular family), etc.

Shut the door! (there is only one open)

I had some trouble with the car. (I own one car only)

The definite article is not restricted in its usage: it can be used with both countable and uncountable nouns.

Wow, the sand is really hot! (an uncountable noun of material)

The film wasn't good but we liked **the music**, (an uncountable abstract noun)

Come and look at **the horses**! (a countable noun, plural)

The definite article can also precede a proper noun. It is used, in particular, with nouns denoting the name of the whole family (*the Browns*) or geographical names such as waterways (*the Indian Ocean, the Volga, the Naroch*, but *Lake Naroch*), mountain ranges (*the Alps, the Urals*, but *Everest*), and the name of cardinal points (*the South, the North*). It must be remembered, however, that **no article** is used with the names of the continents (*Asia, Europe*), countries (*Russia, Belarus, France*), mountain peaks and towns.* There are a great number of set expressions and phrases in English in which the use of the **indefinite, definite or zero article** does not depend on the context. Memorizing some of them will help the learner to cope with the difficulties of using the article. Below is a list of such phrases.

1) with the indefinite article

as a result as a rule as a matter of fact at a glance at a gulp at a distance in a hurry in a loud/low voice in a sense in a whisper in a mess in a good humour in a way in a while in a rush it is a shame it is a pity it is a pleasure once a year/week to have a bath to have a shower to have a wash to have a meal to have a cold to have a row to a certain degree to have a swim to have a smoke to have a rest to have a good time to have a headache (a toothache, etc.) to go for a walk to tell a lie to be at a loss to do smb a favour to make a mistake to give a hand to a certain extent

2) with the definite article

all the same at the latest at the time at the moment by the way for the time being in the afternoon/evening/morning in the singular in the plural in (the) winter/summer/spring in the day-time in the past/present in the centre in the middle in the distance in the doorway in the original in the shade on the whole on the spot on the one hand on the other hand on the safe side out of the question the other day the day after tomorrow the wrong side the right route most of the time the only place (*but* an only child) the same opinion the poor/the rich the sick the wounded the unemployed the needy the handicapped to tell the truth to tell the time to keep the house to make the bed under the influence (of) to lay the table to make the most (best) of smth to do the washing up

3) with the zero article

arm in arm at dawn at dusk at daybreak at twilight at night at midnight at sunrise (sunset) at noon at first sight at night at home at present at dinner beyond recognition by phone/by radio by mistake by chance by name by accident from beginning to end from east to west at work from side to side for sale hand in hand in charge in future in service in demand in spite of in (on) time in search (of) in secret in sight in (for) fun in fact in debt in detail in person it's time on board the ship on fire on sale on leave on hand/at hand/off hand on account (of) on condition (that) out of control out of date out of order out of sight out of place from head to foot step by step to be/to stay in bed to get out of bed/town to be at home/school/college to be in hospital to go to hospital/school/college/university/prison/church to go home/down-town to leave school/home to travel/go/come/get by bus/car to stay/invite for lunch/tea/dinner to have breakfast/lunch/tea to do research to be in trouble to get into trouble to lose control to be in despair to pay attention (to) to take care (of) to make fun (of) to have great fun to shake hands (with) to keep time to ask for permission to study mathematics, physics, history, *but* the history of Art to speak English, *but* the English language to play football, tennis, etc., *but* to play the piano/violin, etc. a kind/sort of place (book, house, etc.)

Compare the use of the article in these sentences.

1. A cat often purrs when it is contented.
2. The cat sleeping on the porch belongs next door.
3. My father bought a shirt and a pair of shoes for himself. The shoes were very expensive.
4. The price of petrol is going up. The petrol I bought yesterday was the cheapest in the area.
5. Happiness is often the product of honesty and hard work.
6. They would like to stay at a hotel, but the hotels here are very expensive.
1. We'll go for a walk if the sun comes out.
8. This is the last time I do you a favour.
9. Thank you for the favour you've done for me.
10. Peter has a charming wife and two children. The two children are twins.
11. It's high time for the children to be in bed.
12. I didn't see the dog when I walked into the room because it was under the bed.

Practise the use of articles.

'a/an' or 'the' A.

1. ... student must use his ID card to be admitted to ... library.
2. If... person expects to play ... guitar well, he must be willing to practise often.
3. Ann looked everywhere for... badminton net. It was in ... attic.
4. Who do you suppose was at... meeting?
5. ... woman who is giving ... speech is ... university teacher.
6. Do you know ... white-haired man who is feeding ... pigeons?
7. What do you think of ... discussion that followed ... meeting?
8. ... melon is ripe, juicy and has ... sweet taste.

9. Unless ... rain stops ... picnic will be held under pavillion.
10. Can you hold ... lid down so I can lock ... suitcase?
11. My sister works in ... large hospital in London. She is ... doctor.
12. ...weather was lovely when I woke up yesterday morning:... sun was shining and there was... beautiful blue sky.
13. My car has broken down and I'll have to check ... engine.
14. ... government plans to help ... poor and ... unemployed.
15. ... ambulance took ... poor woman to hospital only at 7 p.m.
16. Who is ... person who borrowed my umbrella?
17. It was ... lovely house but... stairs were too steep for ... old people.
18. They gave Anna ... guitar for Christmas. She is very good at playing ... guitar,... piano and ... violin. On ... whole, she is ... very gifted girl.
19. These jeans are cheap. I bought them at a small shop somewhere near ... General post-office.
20. If you give me ... hand with ... dishes, we can go out together.
21. Ann went to ... best dressmaker to ensure that her wedding dress fitted her like ... glove.
22. There has been ... dramatic rise of unemployment in ... past ten years.
23. Everything he has said is ... lie. He made up ... whole story.
24. ... boutique opposite my house is having ... sale.
25. Isn't he ... man who plays ... violin in your orchestra?
26. ... village of Baydon where he lived as ... child, has now become part of... town.
27. Are you ... person who telephoned here ... hour ago?
28. If I'm accepted for ... job, I'll have to start at ... beginning of September.
29. Since I had ... bad headache last night, I couldn't go out.
30. Will you send me ... report as soon as it's finished?
31. You shouldn't be taking ... shower now. ... taxi's coming in twenty minutes.
32. ... temperature will drop significantly during ... afternoon.
33. Every morning I had to sort out... mail and distribute ... faxes, before I could have ... cup of coffee.
34. ... drought this year has been less severe than last year.
35. We spent... wonderful evening with ... Stones.
36. ... gentle wind was blowing through ... trees.
37. As soon as he had saved enough money he bought... new computer.
38. It was ... very stormy night. ... wind was howling and ... rain was beating against... windows.
39. There was ... accident which held up all ... traffic coming into town.
40. Obviously we aren't going for ... walk in ... rain.
41. It's pleasant to play ... game of tennis on ... warm summer afternoon.
42. ... student at... back of... class was reading ... newspaper.
43. ... elephant's trunk is very strong, it can hold ... log of wood.
44. You eat too little; that amount wouldn't keep ... sparrow alive.

B. Once upon a time, there was ... cat and ... dog who lived in ... small house. One day ... cat said to ... dog, 'This place is too small for us we need ... bigger house'. ... dog agreed. 'We could even have ... garden where I could bury my bones'. 'Well, I'm not sure ... garden is a good idea', said ... cat. 'Who would cut ... grass?' 'We could employ ... cat to do it', said ... dog. 'Why not... dog?' said ... cat. And so they never left... small house because they couldn't agree.

C. Last summer we went to ... seaside for two weeks. Unfortunately, we hadn't booked ... accommodation before we went, and we had ... awful time finding ... room to stay in. ... only room we could find was very small, but it had ... lovely view of ... sea and was only two minutes from ... beach. ... weather was very hot, and on ... first day I stayed out too long. I got... terrible sunburn and had to stay in bed ... next day. After that, however, everything went well and we had ... wonderful holiday.

'the' or 'I' A.

1. What... lovely weather we are having today!
2. What... charming people your parents are!
3. ... Johnsons are going to visit... USA and ... Canada in ... summer.
4. ... wood is much dearer than it used to be. In fact, ... wood I used to make ... shelves in ... living room cost me a pretty penny.
5. ... pollution is one of ... greatest problems facing ... mankind.
6. ... moon and ... earth both go round ... sun.
7. How delicious ... cake is!
8. They have two holiday homes, one in ... mountains and ... other at... seaside.
9. ... small room was crammed with ... furniture.
10. For ... further information phone ... number below.
11. Many people think that ... bears are ... gentle animals but they can be very aggressive.
12. As far as I know she didn't make ... very impressive progress.
13. Don't eat in this restaurant. ... food is awful there.

14. When I was at... school I was really bad at... History.
15. ... flood did a lot of... damage to ... monuments of... city.
16. ... chopsticks are used a lot in ... Japan.
17. I learnt... French at... school, but when I tried to speak it,... French didn't understand me.
18. It's more difficult to play ... violin than to learn to play ... tennis.
19. ... government has promised to spend more on ... health and... education.
20. ... police showed him lots of photographs but he wasn't able to pick out... man who'd robbed ... bank.
21. They gave me ... incorrect information.
22. ... letter is from ... Browns with whom I stayed ... last summer.
23. ... time is ... money.
24. Oh, look at ... time, we'd better get moving.
25. It was ... only time I had ever seen her lose her temper.
26. It's ... time you were more serious.
27. ... film takes us back to ... time of... American war of ... Independence.
28. We are not going on ... holiday this year - we are trying to save ... money.
29. ... silence was suddenly broken by ... loud scream.
30. ... money he borrowed from his uncle was of little help.
31. ... shirts on ... washing-line must be dry now.
32. ... boiling kettle filled ... kitchen with ... steam.
33. I don't mind staying at ... home and looking after .. children this afternoon.
34. If you went to ... Indonesia for ... summer you would enjoy it there.
35. ... Royal Hotel was almost completely destroyed by ... fire last Saturday.
36. You can't expect... kindness and ... support from your family if you don't give ... same to them.
37. ... guests didn't have to clear up after ... party. ... staff did all ... cleaning ... next day.
38. ... birds can fly high in ... sky.
39. ... room was completely empty so some of us sat down on ... floor while ... others leaned against.. .wall.
40. They managed to arrive on ... time despite ... heavy snowstorm.
41. ... National Gallery is located in ... Trafalgar Square.
42. In spite of... fact that... music was quiet... neighbours complained.
43. We had ... lovely weather last week.
44. He has just given me ... very helpful advice.

B. Dear Susan,

Well, I've been here in ... New York for two weeks now. I'm having ... time of my life. I am staying with my parents' friends, ... Browns. So far I'm not missing ... home at all. ... Americans are very different from ... English. I noticed this ... moment I arrived at... Kennedy Airport, where ... most people were very friendly. I've done a lot of sightseeing since I arrived. I've seen all... famous sights. ... ones I liked best were ... Statue of Liberty and ... Times Square. We are going to ... Washington ... next week. I'm looking forward to visiting ... President's home, ... White House. Mr Brown won't be able to come with us as planned though, because he has ... flu. He was going to drive us there but now we are going by ... bus instead. Give my love to your mother and father and ... family. Ill be ... home for ... Christmas. Love,
Caroline

Miscellaneous Practice

- j What is ... capital of India? - Delhi. 2 What do you think of Margaret? - She is... extremely nice person.
3. I had ... cup of... coffee and some toast for breakfast this morning.... coffee was delicious.
4. He is trying to find ... job, but there isn't much work available at... present.
5. Would you like to travel round ... world?
6. It was ... excellent holiday. We had ... great fun.
7. I'd like ... hamburger, please.
8. Could you switch off... TV? Nobody is watching it.
9. Most of... land in this region belongs to ... small farmers.
10. I've got... book about... life of John Kennedy.
11. ... architect designs ... buildings.
12. I enjoy talking to ... old people.
13. I find ... History ... interesting subject.
14. They studied ... history of the Spanish Civil War at... school.
15. ... instruction was so complex that I couldn't understand it.
16. You must contact ... manager and tell him about ... telegram. It is ... urgent telegram.
17. It's ... film about... homeless people.
18. Do you get on with ... neighbours who live next door?
19. Pauline asked me ... question to which I had no reply.
20. Noticing ... door was open, I decided to go in. It turned out to be ... museum.
21. Slamming ... door, Carol drove off in ... car her father had given her as ... present.
22. ... blind people often have ... excellent sense of... smell.

23. When Sally was on ... holiday in ... Alps, she broke her leg and had to stay in ... hospital for two weeks.
24. ... sweets were wrapped in ... silver paper.
25. Could you turn down ... music? It's too loud.
26. She looked at me with ... strange smile.
27. We never eat... white bread at home.
28. No news is ... good news.
29. ... air is very fresh today.
30. ... apple ... day is good for you.
31. I'm ... vegetarian. I don't eat... meat or ... fish.
32. Do you like ... English beer?
33. ... acting was poor, but we enjoyed ... music.
34. There's nothing like ... whipped cream for me.
35. ... vase is ... kind of pot for holding flowers.
36. Don't buy ... artificial silk, we must have ... real silk.
37. Do you have ... sleeping bag by any chance?
38. Being ... man of... fixed views he refused to listen to our arguments.
39. Have you heard ... news?
40. When I came in he was lying on ... bed.
41. ... nail went right through ... wall.
42. What... strange ideas you have!
43. As far as ... mathematics is concerned it was... complete failure.
44. Every Sunday he went to ... church.
45. Either ... Germany or ... Holland will win ... World Cup.
46. I have never seen such ... huge crowd of... people.
47. Many people eat in ... Chinese restaurants in ... London.
48. Several of... passengers were hurt and one of them was taken to ...hospital.
49. Measles, which is ... children's disease is dangerous for adults.
50. Mr Heyman was considered ... excellent music teacher.
51. Did you have ... good time at your dacha?
52. ... Prime Minister is to make ... statement tomorrow.
53. Mike became ... furniture salesman after leaving ... school.
54. They thought that... car was too expensive.
55. There were more people on ... beach than in ... water.
56. It's ... pity he made ... fool of himself.
57. Which do you prefer:... classical or popular music?
58. Amundsen was.. first man to reach ... South Pole.
59. He promised he would never bet on ... horses.
60. He used to tell such ... funny stories.
61. ... family who live opposite our house are French.
62. Wait till... referee blows his whistle.
63. Because he had run out of... money, he had to look for ...job.
64. Tom went hunting in ... afternoon. When he returned,... dinner was on ... table.
65. Her father has been involved in ... automobile accident recently.
66. I dislike ... idle talk. It's... sheer waste of... time.
67. He is having ... financial difficulties now.
68. ... children go to ... school by ... bus.
69. I bought... pound of... bacon and... loaf of brown bread at... grocery.
70. ... festival will be opened ... day after tomorrow.
71. ... children who learn easily should start... school as early as possible.
72. Every dark cloud has ... silver lining.
73. Have you got... few minutes? I'd like to have ... chat with you.
74. Running has been ... very popular sport in ... United States for ... several years now.
75. Browns Ltd is ... large company in ... Manchester. It makes ...soap.
76. Europe and ... America are separated by ... Atlantic Ocean.
77. ... Elbrus is ... highest peak of... Caucasian mountains.
78. ... sonnet is ... poem of... fourteen lines.
79. ... blood is thicker than ... water.
80. ...view from above ... shore was magnificent.
81. ... old woman was cared for by ... nurse from... hospital. 82.I couldn't explain why my best shoes had ... hole in them.
83. Don't you think that... scissors in ... sewing box need sharpening?
84. Their lives became ... misery after ... disaster.
85. It was ... love at ... first sight that brought... couple together.

86. ... tortoise is ... sort of ... reptile.
87. ... wounded were taken to ... nearest hospital.
88. I live next to ... nursing home for ... very old.
89. Living away from ... home will do him ... enormous amount of good.
90. ... cost of... living in Sweden is higher than in ... other countries of... Europe.
91. ... wrecked liner is still lying on ... sea bottom.
92. Never speak ill of... dead.
93. There are ... shops at ... either end of... street.
94. Most of... people complain about... weather here.
95. I'm warning you! ... next person who does that will be in ... trouble!
96. ... dictionary is ... book in which the words of... language are listed alphabetically.
07. ... bomb is ... weapon which explodes and damages ... large area.
98. I'll send you ... letter. It's best not to talk about such things on ... phone.
99. I can't understand ... text;... language is very difficult.
100. I'd invited five people to ... party. Out of... five people, only John and Mary could come, ... others couldn't.
101. ... doctor who examined ... sick children was very gentle.
102. Ask Paul, he is ... only one who knows ... answer.
103. ... Smith's bookshop is in ... Oxford street opposite ... Barclays Bank.
104. There was... earthquake in my hometown last year. It was just ... small one, but I could feel ... ground shaking.
105. At ... end of... busy day, ... sleep is ... best tonic.
106. You can lead ... horse to ... water but you can't make him drink.
107. I couldn't make out what... passage said.
108. Linda stopped ... car to let... black cat run across... street.
109. Jack wears ... glasses because he has ... poor eyesight.
110. ... air is full of... smoke,... dust and ... other harmful substances. We must do something to reduce ... air pollution.
111. I like to read ... good literature.
112. ... Japanese have ... long and interesting history.
113. ... dog makes ... good pet if it is properly trained.
114. ... people might think you're ... little crazy, but talking to yourself is ... good way to practise English.
115. He irritates ... people by talking in ... funny voice all ... time.
116. You can really help ... environment by using ... unleaded fuel.
117. It would be more sensible for him to save his money instead of spending it like ... water.
118. Don't drink ... coffee in ... evening if you have trouble sleeping at ... night.
119. I'm not very happy with ... kitchen but it will have to do for ... time being.
120. She's quite ... lively person compared with ... rest of her family.
121. Let's wait till ... wind drops before we put ... tent up.
122. ... discovery of... radium marked ... beginning of... new era of... medicine.
123. ... house in which I grew up no longer exists.
124. ... man was accused of having stolen ... woman's purse.
125. ... teacher reminded ... students of their assignment.
126. ... teacher encouraged us to consult... dictionary whenever we were uncertain of ... spelling of ... word.
127. I tried everything but... baby still wouldn't stop crying.
128. Linda offered to look after my cat when I was out of ... town.
129. ... best part of our trip was ... crossing of ... Sahara Desert.
130. We spent three weeks camping near ... Lake Garda in ... Italy.
131. I have ... stunning view of... Mount Kilimanjaro from my window.
132. Even if I had ... money, I wouldn't want to live in ... Bahamas.
133. I decorated ... children's bedroom as fast as I could. In ... week it was done.
134. I haven't got... time to phone him at... week-end. I'll do it ... next week.
135. I went to ... theatre last night and saw ... fabulous play. I thought it was good, anyway, but I read in ... papers this morning that ... critics had slammed it.
136. Your daughter has ... beautiful voice. Her interest in ... singing must be encouraged.
137. ... child can't be given everything he or she wants.
138. ... hospital here is very old and can no longer serve ... needs of... community. ... new hospital should have been built here long ago.
139. When James is feeling ... bit low he usually treats himself to ... meal in ... good restaurant.
140. This is ... first time I've driven ... sports car.
141. If you want to have ... sound sleep try to drink ... glass of... milk before ... bedtime.
142. ... people often have ... very good idea of what colours suit them but they still buy ... wrong colour clothes.
143. He slipped and ... wine spilled all over ... carpet.
144. Brian seems ... ideal person for ... job.
145. After studying ... languages at ... university Steven became ... interpreter at... United Nations.

146. It's very important for ... parents to encourage ... independence in their children.
147. I saw ... woman coming up ... path to .. house. It was ... woman I had seen at... station ... day before.
148. My mother loves ... Italian operas even though she can't understand ... words.
149. ... Neil Armstrong, ... first man on ... moon, used to work for NASA.
150. ... police were called in to deal with ... situation.
151. ... people think ... climate in ... Mediterranean is ... best in ... world.

More practice

1. I find it very difficult to be optimistic. To tell... truth I have applied for 130 jobs in ... last two years and it's always ... same story. Come back when you've got ... bit of experience. I mean, how can I get... experience if nobody wants to give me ... job?

2. Dear Carol,

Just... note to say thank you for ... lovely day yesterday. It was really very hard to get back to work after such ... relaxing time. Delicious food, good company, ... beautiful garden - it really felt like ... mini-holiday. ... kids had... great time too, and are still talking about... dog and... pool. Would you like to come over to us... next weekend? You could come for ... lunch on ...Saturday or... Sunday, and we could go for ... walk in ... hills afterwards if... weather is good. Looking forward to seeing you all next weekend, and with ... lot of thanks again for yesterday.

Love, Jane

3. ... man had ... row with his wife. This made him leave ... home later than usual so he drove to work very fast. While he was going round ... corner, ... dog ran across ... road. ... man stamped on ... brakes,... car skidded (... road was in ... very bad condition),... man lost control of his car and crashed into ... lorry which was parked on ... double yellow line.

4. Portrait of a family;... Bartons

There are three adults and two children in this family. ... children are Ben, aged twelve, and little Stella, who is four. Their parents are Andrew and Marion.... other adult is Leslie, who's Andrew's brother. He is twenty-four. They live in ... Newcastle,... large city in ... north-east of England. On weekday mornings everyone gets up early; Andrew-Barton works for ... company, which manufactures ... computers. He leaves at seven o'clock. He likes to avoid ... rush hour, he says. Marion suspects that really he likes to avoid ... breakfast with ... children, who are very noisy. Ben catches ... school bus at eight-fifteen. Leslie is at ... university, studying ... physics. He lives away from ... home during term-time, so he avoids ... noise, too.

Stella doesn't go to ... school yet, of course. Next year, she will start at... nursery school where Ben used to go. Her mother is looking forward to this as it will mean that she can go back to ... work. Before her marriage, she lived in London, where she worked for ... National Gallery, in ... Trafalgar Square. She is hoping to find ... same sort of job in... Newcastle.

5. Tina wants to buy a car. She has come to see Brian, who is trying to sell his.

T: So, you don't say much in your advertisement. Is this ...old car?

B: Four years old. Come and have ... look at it.

T: Were you ... first owner?

B: No, I got it two years ago.

T: Have you driven it... lot?

B: Well, I drive to my office in ... city centre five days ... week, but I don't use it much at weekends.

T: I see. Now,... thing is, I'm... doctor. I've just started work at... hospital in Hills Road. I'm on call... lot of the time and I have to find ... car which is really reliable.... car I used to have was always breaking down and giving me ... problems. B: Oh, this one's very good. It may not be ... fastest car around, but it always gets there eventually. And it's got ... new set of ...tyres.

T: Right. It's good to know that. Can I go for ... test drive?

B: Hm, actually, that's not possible right now.

T: Why not?

B: Well, basically, I'm afraid it won't start. You see, ... battery is flat.

6. It was ... wonderful day. We went to ... beach in our old Volvo, and ... children played all day in ... sea. Mary and I walked along ...beach in ... sunshine, looking at... birds and collecting shells. We had ..meal at... little restaurant on ... way home, and drove back late at... night.

7. I want to thank you for ... lovely kitten. I call her Sheba and she has some lovely ways. If you hang ... piece of... string in front of her she always tries to catch it. Sometimes she plays with ... little rubber mouse if I throw it in front of her. On ... warm days she lies outside in ... garden. When Mrs. Ross, ... cleaner, is working here, Sheba often chases ... vacuum cleaner. But Mrs. Ross says she's... best cat in ... world and we all agree with her.

8. ... robots are common in industry and perhaps they will soon be common in the home.... robot working in the home must be able to behave like ... human. You can ask it to make ... breakfast for you! I'd like ... pot of ... coffee, please, and ... boiled eggs'. - 'How many, sir?' - 'Two, please'. You wouldn't have to worry about bringing friends home to dinner. I've brought... friends for ... dinner', you would say, 'please prepare ... meal for six'. Your robot would be ...cook, ... servant and ... cleaner and perhaps it could even do ... shopping. 'We haven't got ... tomatoes', you would say. 'Be ... good robot and get some from ... supermarket'. ... robots would never need to sleep and would never complain. But I wouldn't want them wandering round ... house at... night!

9. I really can't understand why some pupils feel bored when ... history is discussed. Maybe they get... wrong idea

about it at ... school. For me, though, ... subject is ... most important part of... education. This is because there are some very worrying trends in ... modern life. Knowing about... development of... society in ... previous centuries helps us to understand ... society we live in now. We must place ... high value on ... historical research if ... survival of ... human race is to be assured. It's ... matter of... life and ... death.

4. PRONOUNS

4.1. PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

4.1.1. Study the forms and the use of personal, possessive and reciprocal pronouns.

| Personal | | Possessive Proper | Possessive Absolute | Reciprocal |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| Subjective case | Objective case | | | |
| I | me | my | mine | myself |
| you | you | your | yours | yourself |
| he, she, it | him, her, it | his, her, its | his, hers, its | himself, herself, itself |
| we | us | our | ours | ourselves |
| you | you | your | yours | yourselves |
| they | them | their | theirs | themselves |

Note: *Possessive proper* pronouns are used before a noun as an attribute. *Possessive absolute* pronouns are mainly used as a predicative. They are never followed by a noun. Possessive absolute pronouns are typically used in phrases like *a friend of mine, that house of theirs, that brother of yours*, etc.

*It 's not **my** book, it's yours.*

*It **isn't her** car, **hers** is brown.*

*Which coats are **theirs**?*

*A friend of mine is coming to see **me**.*

We went to a party last night and enjoyed ourselves very much.

*Can you do it **yourself**:'*

4.1.2. Choose the correct pronoun.

1 Bob is one of (*our, us, ours*) best pupils. 2. It isn't (*my, mine*) bag. I've left (*my, me, mine*) at home. 3. I've just waxed the floor. Don't walk on (*itself, it, its*) yet. 4. Let (*they, them, their*) read the story again. 5. Will you tell (*we, us, our*) about Great Britain? 6. Is this Mary's scarf? No, it is (*me, my, mine*). 7. (*Your, you, yours*) house is not far from (*our, us, ours*). 8. Whose cigarettes are these? They may be (*our, ours*) cigarettes. Oh, yes, they are (*our, ours*). 9. (*Our, ours*) car is faster than (*their, theirs*). 10. A friend of (*you, yours, your*) came to see (*we, us, ours*) yesterday. 11. We know (*they, them, theirs*) very well and both Peter and Nell know (*we, us, ours*). 12. You can do it without (*mine, my, me*) help but not without (*they, their, theirs*). 13. He couldn't lend me the dictionary because it wasn't (*he, him, his*). 14. She is writing a letter to an old friend of (*her, hers, she*). 15. This suitcase isn't (*us, our, ours*). There's somebody's name on it. 16. This is not (*my, mine, me*) car. (*My, Mine, Me*) is a 1980 model. 17. Could you help me sort out these things? I cannot tell which are (*your, you, yours*) and which are (*we, our, ours*). 18. (*You, your, yours*) ticket is on the table and where is (*her, she, hers*). 19. She first looked at the title of the story and then at (*her, she, hers*). 20. Can I borrow (*your, yours, you*) umbrella? - I'm sorry, it isn't (*me, my, mine*). 21. I'm sorry, but he's busy. Do you mind waiting for (*he, him, his*)? 22. Who told you about it? - A friend of (*you, your, yours*). 23. Don't ask for help. Do it (*you, yourself*). 24. Did he enjoy (*him, his, himself*) at the party? 25. Jill had lived by (*itself, herself, her*) before (*her, hers*) marriage, but now she was happy with her husband in (*their, theirs*) new house which (*her, hers*) husband had built (*him, himself, itself*).

4.1.3. Complete using personal, possessive and reciprocal pronouns.

A. 1. There can be no doubt that Shakespeare ... wrote this play. 2. We were in the park on ... own. 3. My roommate and I have to share a bookshelf. She keeps... books on the top two shelves, and I keep ... on the bottom two shelves. 4. Just between you and ..., I think Tom is going to lose ... job. 5. Our house is almost the same as our neighbours' house. The only difference is that... is grey and ... is white. 6. Jason has only ... to blame for the mistake he made. 7. Your cassette player sounds better than 8. My washing machine can switch ... off. 9. The children arranged the party by ... 10. Mrs Collins is better now. I saw ... down town yesterday. 11. Romeo and Juliet killed

B. Last summer, six months after the wedding, Jill bought ... a land-rover and she had a two weeks holiday in Mexico with her friend Annie. They travelled by ... all over the country, camping by the roadside. One night they became frightened. They told ... that it was silly, but they kept hearing a noise. After that they stayed in hotels. Jill's husband was very pleased when she got home. He hadn't enjoyed ... at all without....

4.2. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS SOME/ANY/NO 4.2.1. Study the use of the pronouns *some*, *any*, *no*.

There is some butter in the fridge. Is there any butter in the fridge? Some people like to get up early. You can get any book you like. There is no money left.

Note 1- Although the basic meaning of *some/any* is 'a small amount of something', *some* may have the meaning of 'какой-то, какая-то' and *any* - the meaning of 'любой'. *Some man wants to see you, Harry. Come at any time you like.*

Note 2: Although *some* is mainly used in affirmative sentences and *any* in interrogative and negative sentences, in conversational speech *some* can be found in questions, too, (*Would you like some tea?*) and *any* can be found in affirmative sentences (in the meaning of 'любой'). See the example above.

Any is also used with *hardly* (*I have hardly any money left.*) and with the preposition *without* when *without any* means *with no*. (*He started his car without any difficulty.*)

4.2.2. Complete the following sentences with *some/any/no*.

1. I'll lend you ... tie except the red one. 2. I haven't got ... money on me. 3. Do you learn ... foreign languages? 4. ... people don't need an alarm clock in the morning. 5. Both the girls have ... relatives here. 6. John gave me ... good advice, but I didn't take ... notice. 7. I didn't get ... letters yesterday. 8. ... books are lying on the table, but there are ... magazines there. 9. We haven't got ... time left. 10. I asked all the students in the class, but none of them answered ... of the questions. 11. He couldn't find ... books on geography at the local library. 12. ... time ago I read about it in a magazine. 13. He wants ... more pudding. You can take it away. 14. There isn't ... milk in the fridge but there is ... cream. 15. Most people like Tom but ... don't. 16. ... people are early risers. 17. What book shall I take? - ... you like. 18. The race will be held in ... weather. 19. I went to the manager to get ... information. 20. Go and ask him for ... paper. I haven't got ... in my desk. 21. There isn't ... white bread at the baker's. 22. Have ... more jam. It's very good indeed. - No, thank you. I don't want 23. ... time ago I came across this photo in an old magazine. 24. There aren't ... matches left. We must buy 25. Tomorrow there'll be a little free time to do ... shopping, but today there isn't ... moment to spare for ... other business. 26. I'll sort out these old letters and throw ... away. 27. In ... countries military service is compulsory. 28. Phone me ... time you like tomorrow. I'll be at home all day. 29. I like ... water sports, but not all of them. 30. ... news is good news.

4.3. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS SOME/ANY + ONE/ BODY/THING/WHERE

4.3.1. Study the examples illustrating the use

of the pronouns *someone/somebody*, *something*, *somewhere**, *anyone/anybody*, *anything*, *anywhere**, *no one/nobody*, *nothing*, *nowhere**.

Compounds with *some*, *any* and *no* follow the rules mentioned above (see 4.2.1).

There's someone at the door.

Somebody wants to see you.

He's gone somewhere.

I want to tell you something important.

Is anyone ready?

Can anybody help me?

Anyone can do it. It's easy.

No one helped me.

The book is nowhere to be found.

Nothing can be more important at the moment.

Note that *somewhere*, *anywhere*, *nowhere* are sometimes defined as adverbs.

Note: All these pronouns function in the sentences as nouns, i.e. as an *object or subject*.

Don't sit idle. Do something.

Someone's knocking at the door.

Compare with *some*, *any*, *no* which function in the sentence as an attribute.

Some people are hard to please. No man is wise (if all times).

4.3.2. Complete the following sentences with *someone (somebody)*, *anyone (anybody)*, *something*, *anything*, *nobody (no one)*, *nothing*, *somewhere*, *anywhere*, *nowhere*.

A. 1. It's too dark here. I can't see 2. Can I do ... for you? 3. They went ... at all during the holiday. 4. It was very disappointing. Absolutely ... happened. 5. I want to tell you 6. Did you turn the oven off? I think I can smell ... burning. 7. It was quiet in the room ... said anything. 8. Has ... seen Paul today? 9. Was there ... interesting in the paper yesterday? 10. ... likes to stay in town on a hot day. 11. Everyone was listening to the guide. ... said anything. 12. Speak louder. I don't hear 13. Is ... going to see the house today? 14. Are you going ... today? - No, I am not going ... today. I am too tired. 15. ... understood the rule and the teacher had to explain it again. 16. I know ... at all. 17. I can't add ... to what I've said. 18. There is ... waiting for you in the lobby. 19. I don't want ... to eat. 20. He looked at my pictures but didn't say 21. The accident looked serious. Fortunately ... was injured. 22. That's a very easy question. ... can answer it. 23. There is ... interesting at his exhibition. 24. I don't think there is ... in the office. 25. I am bored. I'd like to go ... tonight. 26. I left the house without saying ... to her. 27. He's lazy. He never does 28. She's standing over there, near the bookshop. I think she is waiting for ... - 29. I can't find my watch ... I've looked all over the house. 30. The bus was completely empty. There wasn't ... on it. 31. It's a stupid idea. Ask ... and they will tell you. 32. I don't know ... who speaks Chinese.

g. 1. Jill is lonely because she doesn't know ... in her new village. ... in her village is old. They are all over sixty. There is a shop in the village, but Jill doesn't go to it because ... is very expensive. Jill has been living in the village for three weeks, but still... has talked to her. But yesterday ... in the shop did smile at her. She doesn't have a car and at weekends she gets bored because there is... to do.

2.1 always go to work by train. It's much more relaxing than going by car. You can look at the countryside or read a newspaper, and there's usually ... interesting to talk to. When I go to work early, I am often alone and there is ... else on the train. But when the waiter walks through and asks: «Does ... want tea or coffee?», I feel better.

4.4. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS *MUCH, MANY, A LOT OF*

4.4.1. Study the use of the pronouns *much, many, a lot of*.

Are there many plants in the city? He - with countable nouns - with

doe m 't have many friends Is there uncountable nouns

much snow on the ground? We haven - with both countable and

't much money left. He's read a lot of uncountable nouns

English classics. I've got a lot of

work to do this morning.

Note: The indefinite pronouns *much* and *many* are used preferably in questions and negative sentences. *Much* and *many* are used in affirmative sentences when they are preceded by *too* or *so*.

I have too many problems on my hands.

I have so many offers that I don't know what decision to take.

4.4.2. Complete the sentences with *much, many, a lot of*.

1. There isn't... international news in the local paper. 2. In the last twenty-four hours too ... things happened. 3. There is too ... sugar in my coffee. 4. Are there ... students among your friends? 5.1 don't have ...patience with incompetence. 6. His work is well-paid but doesn't give him ... satisfaction. 7. Martin spent... time in hospital last year. 8. You'll have to work at English as ... as possible. 9. Does she have ... spare time now? 10.1 haven't... time for study and that's why I have so ... mistakes in my homework. 11. Please don't make so ... noise. Father is working. 12. There isn't ... furniture in the flat. 13. Have you got... work to do tonight? 14.1 have so ...things to do that I don't know which to do first. 15.1 haven't met... of these people. 16. He didn't earn ... money and lived in a small house. 17. How ... of these books have you read? 18. There are too ... things he can't explain. 19. There isn't... time to catch the train. 20. He didn't earn ... money and couldn't rent a big flat. 21. How ... does it cost? 22. The doctor has so ... patients that he has to work at least 12 hours a day. 23. I think there's too ... violence on television. 24. How ... progress has your country made in improving the quality of medical care? 25.1 found ... information in this book.

4.5. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS *LITTLE, FEW, A LITTLE, A FEW*

4.5.1. Study the use of the pronouns *little, few, a little, a few*.

I received a few letters yesterday.

There are few job opportunities here.

Very few customers complained about the price.

Ttiere is still a little snow on the roofs of the houses.

There isn 't much food left. There's only a little.

They won't win. There is too little hope.

Note: *Few, little* are used to emphasize the fact that the quantity is small.

The weather was rainy, so very few people came to see the match.

There's little time. We must hurry up.

A few, a little are used to state the positive fact that there is some quantity.

I have a little time, so we can sit and talk for a while.

Note: After *very, too, so* only *little and few* can be used while after '*only*' *a little, a few* are typical.

She did very little work during the term. I won't be surprised if she fails her exams. There isn't much new information in the article. There's only a little.

4.5.2. Complete the sentences with *little, few, a little, a few*.

1. There was very ... snow that winter. 2. When she sold her house she only took ... furniture with her and ... personal possessions. 3. Very ... people know about it. 4. John has too much money and too ... sense. 5. I'd like to ask you ... questions. 6. He's got a lot of stamps in his collection but his brother has 7. He worked hard but achieved 8. He is not sociable. He has ... friends. 9. I enjoy my life here. I have ... friends and we have a lot of fun together. 10.1 saw Tom only ... days ago. 11. There's been a shortage of water because there has been very ... rain

recently. 12. Pass me the jug please. There's ... milk in my coffee. 13. She can ski... but she can't skate. 14. I don't think he can afford it. He earns very 15. There's no need to hurry. We still have ... minutes left. 16. It was very cheap. It only cost... pounds. 17. I tried to help but there was ... I could do. 18. He said very ..., practically nothing in fact. 19. He's not well-known.... have heard of him. 20. I can't decide now. I need ... time to think it over. 21. He expected ... people, but no one came. 22. ... customers have come in and spent ... money, but on the whole trade has been rather dull. 23. The group have brought very... luggage, only ... suitcases. but I'll need ... help to carry them up the stairs, because some of them are heavy. 24. He is very successful even though he has very ... education. 25. Jack is usually very helpful but he had ... advice for us this time. 26. If your door squeaks, put... oil on the hinges. 27. We did very ... business during the recession but... customers continued to spend .. money on jewellery. 28. This car isn't expensive to run. It uses ... petrol. 29. This town isn't well-known and there isn't much to see. ... tourists come here. 30. ... people voted for him; he is not popular.

4.6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS **BOTH, EITHER, NEITHER, NONE**

4.6.1. Study the following examples showing the use of the pronouns both, either, neither, none, either ... or, neither ... nor.

Both these hotels are very good. **Both of these** hotels are very good. **Both of us (them)** can speak English. **Both Ann and Peter** are fond of skating. **Both the hotels** are very good. You can stay at **either** of them.

I don't know what she does. She is **either** a secretary or a nurse.

Both the hotels are good. **Neither of them** is too expensive.

He is **neither** British nor American. He's Australian. Is he British or American? - **Neither**. He's Australian. **None of the children** like milk.

Note: **Both, either, neither** are used when we are talking about two things. After **either, neither** the verb is used in the singular form.

Both the girls speak French. **Neither of them** speaks English.

After **none** the verb can be used both in the singular and in the plural forms. A plural verb is more usual.

None of my friends are keen on football.

4.6.2. Complete the following sentences with the suitable pronouns.

1. It was a very good football match.... of the teams played very well. 2. Which of the two films do you prefer? The first one or the second one? - Actually I didn't like ... of them. 3. We didn't like the hotel. It was ... clean ... comfortable. 4. He lost... his book and his glasses. 5.... of the two pictures is satisfactory. 6. Do you mind which sandwich I take? -No, take 7. ... of the people I met were English. 8. I like both jackets. I'll take ... of them. 9. We couldn't go to a restaurant because ... of us had any money. 10. Is it your car or your sister's? - It's my father's. 11. He took the open book in ... his hands and came to her side. 12. ... of his opponents spoke at the meeting. 13. I think we are ... a little bit overtired. 14. We took a few photographs but... of them were very good. 15. ... of my family are rich. 16. Have your parents got a car? - No,... of them can drive. 17.... the train and the bus stops at Winsford, so it's best to come ... by car ... by underground. 18. I think they are both very impolite.... Bob ... Jenny replied to my invitation. 19.... you keep quiet... I'll have to ask you to leave. 20. I am looking for opportunities ... in this country ... abroad. 21. I received two job offers, ... of which I accepted. 22. Jerry is engaged in several business ventures. ... of them is profitable. 23. The couple living in the house next door are ... college professors. 24. I didn't meet ... his sister ... his brother. 25. Most of the students read ... the books but they didn't find anything very useful. 26. Which of these shirts would you prefer? - ... will do. 27. ... of these hotels are good, ... of them would be all right. 28.... my wife and I like French cooking. 29.... of the boys have ever driven a tractor.

4.7. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS **(THE) OTHER, (THE) OTHERS, ANOTHER**

4.7.1. Study the following examples showing the use of the pronouns (the) other, (the) others, another.

Some people like coffee, other people like tea. Some people like coffee, others like tea.

Why are you sitting here alone? Where are all **the others**?

Both of my brothers work. **One of them** is a driver and **the other** is an engineer.

Can I have **another** cup of tea?

Note 1: **Another** is derived from *an other* and is used, accordingly, with nouns in the singular only.

Note 2: **Others** and *the others* are used in the sentence as *nouns*.

4.7.2. Complete the following sentences with the pronouns other, others, the other, the others, another.

A. 1. I've got two sisters. One of them is a nurse,... is still a student. 2. Only two of us are here.... students have already left. 3. Her two sons were playing in the garden. She turned her eyes from one to 4. There was ... pause. 5. This hat is too small for me. Can you give me ... one, a size bigger? 6. Alec whispered something from ... side of the table. 7. Some people like spring, ... prefer summer. 8. She went to the kitchen and came back with ... cup of tea. 9. I've brought two of the books you gave me. I'll bring ... books next Friday. 10. I'm not doing any English, I'm busy with ... things now. 11. Three parachutes opened one after.... 12. He entered the room and saw Mike and Martha sitting on the sofa. He looked first at one, then at.... 13. He wanted to get to ... side of the river. 14. I've lost my cigarette-lighter. I'll have to buy ... one now. 15. Some people are lazy. ... are energetic. Most people are a mixture of both. 16. Excuse me, waiter. Could you bring me ... fork? I dropped mine on the floor. 17. Only two countries in South America, Bolivia and Paraguay, are inland. All of... have coastlines. 18. Washington is one of the five states of the United States which borders on the Pacific Ocean. What are ... states? 19. I'll finish the report soon. Give me ... twenty minutes and I'll be ready to go with you. 20. My sister has two children.

One of them is five and ... is seven. 21. Some people like to take vacation in the mountains, ... prefer the seashore. 22. The Anderson twins are identical. They look alike, and they think alike. Sometimes when one begins a sentence, ... finishes it. 23. Scandinavia consists of four countries. One is Denmark, ... are Finland, Norway and Sweden. 24. The car I bought last year turned out to be a real disaster! I'll never buy... one of the same make. 25. Some babies begin talking as early as six months; ... babies don't speak until they are more than two years old. 26. Bob is no longer young. It's going to be difficult for him to find ... job. 27. There are several means of mass communication. The newspaper is one. Television is

B. At a Shop

Shop-assistant: Can I help you?

Customer: I'd like to buy some cassettes. What kinds do you have?

Shop-assistant: Well, we have two kinds. These play for 60 minutes, and ... play for 90 minutes.

Customer: Don't you have any... that play for 45 minutes?

Shop-assistant: Sorry, but we're out of those at the moment.

Customer: Oh, well. I'll take two of the 60-minute ones.

Shop-assistant: All right.

Customer: Wait a minute. I think I'll get... one, too.

Shop-assistant: So, you want three all together.

Customer: Right. By the way, is there ... music store around here? I really do need some 45-minute cassettes.

Shop-assistant: Well, there are two ... in the neighbourhood. One is in Bond Street, and ... is in Uxbridge Street.

Customer: Thanks.

4.8. PRONOUNS EACH/EVERY

4.8.1. Study the following examples.

*I asked **every** person in the room the same question.*

***Each** person gave a different answer.*

They spend a fortnight in the mountains almost every year.

***Each** member of the team got a prize.*

***Each** of us needed a good rest.*

Note: We use *every* when we think of a whole group; we use *each* when we think of the members of a group separately, one at a time.

4.8.2. Choose the correct pronoun.

A. 1. They believe (*every/each*) word he says. 2. I asked (*every/each*) student in class, but none of them could answer my question. 3. The boys ate (*every/each*) cake on the plate. They didn't leave anything to the girls. 4. The match was very exciting and our team scored twice in (*every/each*) half. 5. (*Every/Each*) child at the party was given a present to take home. 6. (*Every/Each*) orange costs ten pence. 7. I see Jack almost (*every/each*) day. 8. (*Every/Each*) of the children was given a piece of paper and a crayon. 9. (*Every/Each*) time I ask her about her brother she doesn't seem to know anything new. 10. What a wonderful movie! I enjoyed (*every/each*) minute of it. 11. I still see her (*every/each*) now and then. 12. (*Each/Every*) of the kids arriving for the first time is shown around the school. 13. (*Each/Every*) item of the programme ought to be carefully checked. 14. You'll have to apply the ointment (*every/each*) other day. 15. The airline takes (*each/every*) possible precaution to ensure the safety of its passengers.

B. The Miltons are all going on holiday this year. They have looked at... brochure in the travel agent's and they've decided to go to Portugal. They went to an island last year but ... beach they went to was filthy. Tom was sick ... day and Jane was bitten by insects on ... leg. ... time the twins went swimming they nearly drowned and Mary got an infection in ... ear when she wore the cheap earrings she bought in the market.

4.9. PRONOUNS ALL/WHOLE

4.9.1. Study the following examples.

***All** children should complete the primary course. **All** the students stopped talking. He soon lost all hope of becoming a professional tennis player.*

*I didn't see the whole film (**all** the film). I missed the first part. But: I finished all the coffee, (with uncountable nouns)*

Compare the word order: **the whole.../all the....** Before place names, **the whole of** is mainly used: *the whole of Europe.*

In some common time expressions, both **whole** and **all** are possible: *the whole afternoon/night/week - all (the) afternoon/night/week; the whole time ~ all the time; mi-whole life - all my life.*

4.9.2. Complete the sentences with the appropriate pronoun. Insert *the* where necessary.

1. Did you remember to switch off... lights? 2. Have you spent ... money I gave you? 3. The weather was terrible yesterday. We spent... day at home. 4. Did you understand information I gave you? 5. She was hiding in the room ... time. 6. Have you read ... book? 7. The fire destroyed ... building. 8. ... I've eaten today is a sandwich. 9. Do ... of your friends study English? 10. He didn't say where he was going. ... he said was that he was going away. 11. On Saturday Alan spent... day fixing his motorbike. 12. Nick has spent his ... life in Bristol but he wasn't born there.

4.10. DEFINING (RELATIVE) PRONOUNS *WHO(M)/ WHOSE/WHICH/THAT*

4.10.1. Study the examples.

The man who spoke to us wasn't English.

*Dr. Jones is the professor **who(m)** I told you about.*

*Dr. Jones is the professor about **whom** I told you/**that** I told you about.*

*Did you see the letter **which/that** came this morning?*

*She's the girl **whose** brother works in the post office.*

4.10.2. Complete the sentences with the appropriate pronoun.

A. 1. That's the woman ... works in the bank. 2. Most of the people ... work in Peter's office are very nice. 3. People ... outlook on life is optimistic are usually happy people. 4. Have you seen the book ... was on this table? 5. The man ... we spoke to wasn't very nice. 6. Mr. and Mrs. Allen are the people ... child was injured in an accident. 7. I really enjoyed the book ... I read last week. 8. The woman ... answered the phone asked me to call back later. 9. Mary has two brothers. Do you know the one ... lives in America? 10. What's the name of the man ... plays James Bond? 11. The money ... I left on the table seems to have disappeared. 12. The man ... bicycle I borrowed lives next door. 13. Carl is the one ... desk is next to mine. 14. You are the only person here ... knows me. 15. The pianist... played at the concert last night is internationally famous. 16. The restaurant ... Bob recommended was expensive. 17. The woman ... lives next door to us is a weathercaster on a local TV station. 18. The speech to ... we listened last night was informative. 19. The people about... the novelist wrote were factory workers and their families. 20. The cold weather ... swept in from the north damaged the fruit crop. 21. Hunger and poverty are worldwide problems to ... solutions must be found. 22. A barrel is a large container ... is made of wood and metal. 23. Mr. Green is the man ... I was talking about. 24. The chair ... Sally inherited from her grandmother is antique. 25. I read about the child ... life was saved by her pet dog. 26. You need to talk to a person ... you can trust. You will feel better if you do.

B. 1. We've got a small house ... we built ourselves. At the back of the house is Lake Geneva. In the summer the lake is full of boats ... carry passengers, ... work or shop in other towns and villages. The house next door to ours is owned by a German couple ... we see quite often. The people ... house is immediately opposite ours have lived here for generations and are also friendly. There is a small shop ... sells food and drink, but of course we go into Lausanne for things... we can't buy locally.

2. Andrew James owns three summer cottages ... he rents out to visitors. There are people ... return every year and some ... he now calls friends. Many visitors, however, are less than satisfactory. The cleaners ... go into the cottages at the end of the week are often shocked. They find hairdye ... adults have left on the bathroom walls, drawings ... bored children have put on bedroom walls; kettles ... smell because visitors have boiled fish in them. There are people ... spill a mug of coffee on the carpet and leave it there. They do not report television sets ... are broken or glasses they have smashed. One family took home a temperature knob ... only fits one particular make of cooker. At the end of each week, Mr. James and his wife search for spoons ... guests have dropped in the dust and check cushions ... they have turned round to hide the food stains.

3. Daniel Defoe ... was born in London in 1660 is the author of Robinson Crusoe ... has become a children's classic. The book was based on the experiences of a sailor called Alexander Selkirk. It's curious that Crusoe ... we think of as a kindly man is really a typical colonist.

Defoe ... techniques are still employed in newspaper offices today has been called the first English novelist, but he was really a great journalist. This is why his best book is a wonderful reconstruction of the Great Plague of 1665.

4. The people ... are employed to tell us what the weather is going to be like are called weather forecasters. The ones ... write the forecasts ... appear in the newspapers don't usually write their names under the forecasts ... they make. But this is not true of those ... faces become familiar to us on TV, and they are the ones ... we blame if their forecasts are wrong. They are not people ... I feel sorry for, though, because they always speak as if they knew all the answers and never admit the mistakes... they made the day before.

4.11. MIXED PRACTICE

Complete the sentences with the appropriate pronouns.

A. 1. If you can spare me ... time, I'd like to make ... suggestions. 2. There's so ... work to do that we haven't... time to spare. 3. I come home so tired that I can do ... work in the evenings. 4. We couldn't find the person ... car was blocking our driveway. 5. There are ... of chocolate biscuits here. Would you like ... one? 6. We didn't have ... petrol left. So we had to look for a filling station. 7. I like ... fruit except bananas. 8. Many people are multilingual, but very ... people speak more than ten languages. 9. Very ... of the medical staff come from the local area. 10. I thought I had met... of the people here but I don't know ... of them. 11. Being a parent had brought him ... happiness. 12. How ... homework did the teacher assign? 13. I think ... lemon juice on fish makes it taste better. 14. John overslept and missed his plane to Paris. He was angry at... for not checking his alarm clock before going to bed. 15. Sue. please help ... to some more cake. 16. Whenever we have problems in life, we have to be careful not to waste too much time feeling sorry for.... 17. We should ask ... if we are doing ... in our power to solve this problem. 18. I enjoyed watching everyone on the beach.... people were playing volleyball, while ... were picnicking. 19. My report is due today, but I need ... two days to finish it. 20. Joe and Frank work as a team. They get on well with each 21. There aren't... jobs available in this area at the moment. 22. She made the soup by mixing ... meat with rice. 23. Can you help me? I need ... information. 24. Our weather is cloudy in winter. We don't get... sunshine. 25. ... of the birds has its own cage. 26. Alex bought a bicycle ... is specially designed for long-distance racing. 27. People ...

don't get enough sleep may become short-tempered and irritable. 28. Only ... of the films shown at this cinema are suitable for children. 29. We've made ... in the hope of attracting more customers but so far there's been very ... response. The trouble is that... people haven't any money to spare. We'll need ... luck to make a profit this year. 30. I have read ...book this author has ever written. 31. Before giving her answer she looked at... of the children in turn. 32. We've drunk ... the water. There isn't... more left. 33. ... student has to fill in a questionnaire. 34. Everybody arrived late,... didn't surprise me in the least. 35. If that doesn't work, you'll have to find ... way of solving the problem. 36. Cactuses need very ... water. 37. Do you know any ... people who might have a reason to do this? 38. This museum may be closed but... tourist places are open. 39. On ... life became much quieter after John had left. 40. It rained ... the time we were on holiday. 41. You have your ... life ahead of you.

B. 1. Darren isn't happy in his new job. He doesn't earn ... money even though he has... responsibilities. Very ... companies he has worked for in the past have paid him so ... money for so ... work. He has sent ... applications to other companies, but there are very ... jobs and too ... people looking for work these days. Darren has ... hope of finding anything better.

2. These days more people are learning how to use computers. ... of them have to because of their work,... just want to play games,... are actually interested in computing. These days you don't need ... money to buy a computer and ... knowledge of computing is required to use one. There are ... of different uses for them, such as letter writing and keeping accounts.

3. The school trip is tomorrow and I want to remind everyone of a few things. I don't want ... to miss the bus. Last year ... pupils were left behind because they arrived late. There are hardly ... seats left on the coach, so remember to put your bags and coats in the boot before you get on. ... will be allowed to smoke on the coach. I hope you will all bring warm clothes. Does ... have ... questions? Good. If you remember what I've said, there will be ... problems.

5.ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

5.1 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS AFTER SOME VERBS

5.1.1. Study these examples comparing the use of adjectives and adverbs after some verbs.

She looks beautiful in her new dress.

The soup tastes/smells good.

She felt happy on the day they met.

She felt bad. (But: She felt well (unwell).)

She plays tennis badly/well.

She speaks French fluently.

Note: Adjectives (not adverbs) are used after the following link verbs: *to seem, to feel, to look, to appear, to sound, to grow, to become.*

5.1.2. Compare the following sentences.

It's a fast car. - The car goes very fast.

It was hard work. - We worked hard. It was early/late. - I arrived early/late.

Note: *Fast/hard/early/late* are both adjectives (sentences on the left) and adverbs (sentences on the right).

5.1.3. Study these examples.

He spoke to the boy in a fatherly manner. She greeted everybody in a friendly way.

The discussion was carried on in a lively way.

Not e: *friendly, lovely, lonely, silly, ugly, lively, fatherly, motherly, cowardly* are adjectives. They have no adverb forms; instead some other structures are used, e.g. *in a friendly way, in a silly manner*, etc.

5.1.4. Choose the correct variant.

A 1. The floor looks (*clean, cleanly*). 2. The plane landed (*safe, safely*) on the runway. 3. When the wind started to blow I grew (*anxious, anxiously*). 4. This list of names appears (*complete, completely*). No more names need to be added. 5. The crowd yelled (*wild, wildly*) when the team scored a goal. 6. The merchant looked (*honest, honestly*), but she wasn't. When I got home I discovered that she had cheated me. 7. Most of the students did (*well, good*) on their tests. 8. The contract offer sounded (*fair, fairly*) to me, so I accepted the job. 9. Jim felt (*terrible/terribly*) about forgetting his son's birthday. 10. A rose smells (*good, well*). 11. As dawn approached, the sky became (*light, lightly*). 12. Bert spoke (*confident, confidently*) when he delivered his speech. 13. I don't think this milk is spoiled. It tastes (*fine, finely*) to me. 14. Dogs make loving, trainable and (*gentle, gently*) pets. 15. Tina is always patient and speaks (*sensitively, sensitive*) when helping her friends with their problems. 16. When people are tired they walk (*slow, slowly*). 17. I listen to the radio a lot but I (*hard, hardly*) ever watch television. 18. I tried (*hard, hardly*) to remember her name but I couldn't. 19. We (*hard, hardly*) know each other. 20. Kate is a (*hard, hardly*) worker. 21. She used to be a great musician, but she (*hard, hardly*) plays at all now.

B. Linda and Larry are at a restaurant.

Larry: You look (*beautiful/beautifully*) tonight, Linda.

Linda: Thanks,

Larry. This is a great restaurant! The food tastes (*good/well*); and the band sounds (*terrific/terrifically*).

Larry: Yes. They really play (*beautiful/beautifully*), don't they? Hey, would you like to dance?

Linda: Sure.

Larry: It feels (*nice/nicely*) to dance again. You know I haven't danced since our wedding.

Linda: Be careful! Those people are really dancing (*bad/ badly*).

Larry: You're right. They look (*dangerous/dangerously*).

Linda: Oh, my toe! Let's sit down.

Larry: Good idea. How about some coffee? The people next to us have just got coffee, and it smells (*wonderful/ wonderfully*).

Linda: That sounds (*nice/nicely*).

5.2. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 5.2.1. Study the following examples.

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|--------------|------------------|
| short | shorter | the shortest |
| big | bigger | the biggest |
| easy | easier | |
| famous | more famous | the most famous |
| careful | more careful | the most careful |

The hotel is cheaper than I expected.

It's the cheapest hotel in the town.

This film is more interesting than the film we saw last week.

It's the most interesting film I've ever seen.

This film is less interesting than the film we saw last week.

*This film is **the least interesting** I've seen this year. It f **as warm** today **as** it was yesterday. It's not **as warm** today as it was yesterday. It's not **so warm** today **as** it was yesterday.*

5.2.2. Use the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. Health and happiness are (*important*) than money. 2. I prefer this armchair. It's (*comfortable*) than the other one. 3. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be much (*expensive*). 4. She is a very intelligent student. She is (*intelli-gent*) student in our school. 5. This hat is too small for me. I need a (*big*) size. 6. The station wasn't as (*near*) as I had expected. 7. Her illness was (*serious*) than we at first thought. 8. It's (*funny*) story I've ever heard. 9. My salary isn't so (*high*) as yours. 10. This furniture is too expensive for me. I would like to buy (*cheap*) furniture. 11. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere (*quiet*)? 12. He is (*famous*) singer in the country. 13. A big car is (*expensive*) to run than a small car. 14. I'm getting too old. This job is for a (*young*) man. 15. Children nowadays seem to be much (*noisy*) than they used to be. 16. You certainly look (*happy*) than you did yesterday. 17. When the children get a bit older they will need a (*big*) house. 18. I know the exams are (*difficult*) time of the year for students. 19. He was much the same as I had remembered him, though he had grown (*heavy*) and (*thickset*). But his hair was even (*curly*) and he had a (*pleasant*) expression. 20. They were suspicious of us at first but eventually they became (*friendly*) and (*relaxed*). 21. Considering everything you have done for them, they ought to be (*willing*) to help. 22. He's one of (*stupid*) people I've ever met. He parked his car in (*narrow*) street in the village, and when another driver complained, he just got angry and awkward. In the end, a policeman came and fined him. Perhaps he'll be (*careful*) in future.

5.2.3. Study the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives.

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|----------|-------------|---|
| good | better | the best |
| bad | worse | the worst |
| far | farther | the farthest (about distance) |
| far | further | the furthest (about time and distance) |
| near | nearer | the nearest (about distance) |
| near | nearer | the next (about order) |
| late | later | the latest (about time) |
| late | latter | the last (about order) |
| old | older | the oldest (about age) |
| old | elder | the eldest (for seniority; used only attributively) |

*The weather is getting **worse** instead **of better**.*

*His office is **further/farther** away than mine.*

***For further** information contact Mr. Williams.*

***The nearest** cafe is a five minutes' walk from here.*

***The next** news bulletin comes in ten minutes.*

*Have you heard the **latest** news?*

The last train leaves in half an hour.
*Tim is the **oldest** of the three friends.*
*Ted is three years **older** than Ben.*
*My **elder** brother is a fireman.*
*The **eldest** of my brothers is twenty-seven.*

5.2.4. Use the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. Who was (*late*) person to leave the building yesterday? 2. (*Near*) train for Cardiff leaves in an hour. 3. They realized their plan without (*far*) difficulties. 4. Nell is three years (*old*) than her husband. 5. Her (*old*) brother is a well-known pianist. 6. The car was parked in (*far*) corner of the yard. 7. You will get (*far*) instructions in a few days. 8. It's (*bad*) weather we've had for a long time. 9. Can you tell me the way to (*near*) post office? 10. Hilda is (*old*) in the family. 11 What do you think of his (*late*) play? I like it much (*good*) than his (*late*) one. 12. I'm looking forward to his (*near*) letter. 13- Who's (*good*) footballer in the team? 14. She's actually a good deal (*old*) than she looks. 15. My (*old*) daughter does nearly all the housework. 16. Mercury is (*near*) to the sun and Pluto is (*far*). 17. You should get the patient to (*near*) doctor as soon as possible. 18. Your ability to remember things gets (*bad*) as the years go by. 19. Are there any (*far*) questions?

5.2.5. A. Complete using comparatives of the adjectives in brackets; add *than* when necessary.

«Oh, why is English such a difficult language! I think it is (*difficult*) French. Sometimes I feel that my English is getting (*bad*), not (*good*)! When you first start learning English, it seems (*easy*) other languages and the grammar looks (*much/ simple*). However, when you become (*a little/advanced*), it gets (*a lot/complicated*). There are also so many words in English! The dictionary I bought when I first came to Britain is far too simple. I'm already looking for something (*big*) and (*comprehensive*)».

B. Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form. Add *the* or *a*, where necessary.

1. Two weeks ago I went down town to buy a birthday present for my (*old*) sister. You couldn't meet (*wonderful*) person than her. She is one of (*charming*) women I know. She is also (*generous-hearted*) person I've ever met. Mother says she could be a bit (*tidy*) than she is. Anyway, the present I wanted to buy her had to be (*good*) I could afford. Eventually, I came across (*beautiful*) scarf I had ever seen Imagine my disappointment when I discovered the next day that Mother had bought her exactly the same scarf.

2. One of (*embarrassing*) experiences that can happen to anyone is to meet old friends, and not recognize them. I once had to welcome a group of students at the airport. I knew (*old*) person, a Madame Dufort, would be in charge of them, and when the group appeared, this woman came towards me, smiling, and said: «Doctor, what a pleasant surprise!)) If I had been (*quick*) and (*intelligent*) I would have said brightly: «How nice to see you, my dear!' as if she were my (*old*) friend, but I just stood there, my face getting (*red*) and (*red*), trying to remember her. The (*bad*) thing about it was that she got even (*embarrassed*) than I was, and said: «You don't remember me,» still not giving me (*slight*) clue. Fortunately, my wife, who is (*quick-thinking*) and (*well-mannered*) than I am, said: «Of course he does, Nicole, but he's (*absent-minded*) person in the world». Nicole had been a student of mine years before, but she looked much (*old*), her hair was going grey, and her face had more lines in it than is usual at her age. She had got married, too, so her name was changed, and I find names (*easy*) to remember than faces.

5.3. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADVERBS 5.3.1. Study the following examples.

Regular Comparisons

Irregular Comparisons

| Positive | Comparative | Superlative |
|--------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| slowly reluctantly | more slowly more reluctantly | most slowly most reluctantly |
| positive | Comparative | Superlative |
| well | better | best |
| badly | worse | worst |
| little | less | least |
| much | more | most |
| far | farther further | farthest furthest |

Note: With adverbs of two or more syllables the comparative and superlative degrees are formed by putting *more* and *most* before the positive form.

Adverbs consisting of one syllable and the adverb *early* form the degrees by adding -er, -est.

*Ann works **harder than** most of her friends.*

*Can you talk a little **louder**?*

*You should go to bed **earlier**.*

*Could you speak **more slowly**, please?*

Nick should drive **more carefully**.
He speaks English **better than** his friend.
The team played **worse than** before.
He moved **as quietly as** he could.

5.3.2. Use the correct form of the adverbs in brackets.

1. It's becoming (*hard*) and (*liard*) to find a job. 2. Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do (*well*) than this. 3. You're standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit (*far*) away? 4. Martin drove (*slowly*) than usual. 5. We have to walk (*fast*) than this if we want to catch the train. 6. This word is (*widely*) used in spoken English than in written. 7. Let me ask him. I know him (*well*) than you do. 8. Jim did (*badly*) in his examination than he had hoped. 9. Could you speak a bit (*distinctly*), please? 10. I don't play tennis much now. I used to play (*often*). 11. We should run (*fast*) if we want to catch the bus. 12. The Earth goes round the sun (*quickly*) than the Jupiter. 13. If you want to pass your exams, you should do your homework (*regularly*). 14. David plays football and tennis much (*well*) than last year. 15. She always arrives at work much (*early*) than anyone else. 16. The children are behaving far (*badly*) than they normally do. 17. Of all animals in the world, which one lives (*long*)? 18. He speaks French (*fluently*) than his sister. 19. John is studying a lot (*hard*) than usual now that his exams are getting closer. 20. They normally play (*well*) than they did last night. 21. She runs (*fast*) of all the girls in her class. 22. Mike can play the guitar (*well*) than Sarah. 23. They arrived (*early*) than I had expected. 24. If he had driven (*carefully*), he wouldn't have got into an accident. 25. Of all children Helen writes (*fast*). 26. She sings (*beautifully*) than anyone else I've ever heard. 27. Eight is late - could you possibly get here any (*early*)? 28. My mother cooks much (*good*) than me.

5.3.3. Use the correct form of the adjectives and adverbs in brackets. Add *the* or *a*, where necessary.

1. Dear Carmen,
Thanks for letting me stay in your villa in Spain last month. It was (*good*) holiday I've ever had. It was (*much*) fun than last year in France. I think Spanish people are (*friendly*) than French, and I could communicate (*easily*) in Spanish, although I still found it (*difficult*) than German. The weather was much (*warm*) than in England, where we've had (*bad*) summer in over ten years.
Love, Larry
2. Last night I saw (*bad*) film I've ever seen. It was even (*bad*) than Rocky IV. It lasted three hours and, believe me, it was (*boring*) three hours in my life. The acting was dull, and the story even (*dull*). I was very disappointed, as I left work (*early*) than usual especially to see it.

6. PREPOSITIONS

6.1. PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

6.1.1. Study the following examples.

He is taking his driving test at four o'clock. He rests **at** weekends but works hard from Monday **till** (**until**) Friday.

You shouldn't go out late **at** night. She came to Paris at the end of August/in August/in 1970.

Can you ring me **after/before** the concert?

The report must be finished **by** the end of the week.

My parents met **during** the war. I saw my parents **for** a few days in the summer.

We have lived here **for** more than three years.

Are you going home **for** Christmas? Mike is coming **in** three days.

We met in the afternoon/in the morning/in the evening.

Women wore long skirts **in** those days. It rained hard **on** Saturday/**on** Saturday morning.

The exhibition opens **on** 12th October.

It's nice to be here **on** such a lovely day (but: **in** such good weather). We've lived here **since** last year.

But: I got a letter from my Italian friends yesterday/the day before yesterday/last Saturday.

He's leaving tomorrow/this Sunday/next Sunday.

Note: **For** is used for a period of time the action takes, took or will take place. **During** is used to say **when** the action happened. E.g. My father was in hospital **for** six weeks **during** the summer.

6.1.2. Complete the following sentences.

A. 1. Most people go out... Friday night but I have to be in bed ... 11 o'clock. 2. My brother is a doctor. He often comes home late ... night. 3. Where's George? He is still at work. He will stay there ... 5 o'clock. 4. It happened ... the war: ... August 1943 to be precise. 5. You must finish this work ... the end of the week. 6. I took my English exam the day ... yesterday. 7. A notice at the door read «Opening hours: ... 7 a.m. ... 5.30 p.m.». 8. Do sit down. Mr. Brown will join you ... a moment. 9. Could you come to see me ... Saturday morning? 10. My parents have lived in this city ... five years already. 11. The train leaves ... five minutes. 12. ... Saturday I am at home ... five o'clock. 13. I haven't driven a car ... autumn. 14. He's been interested in music ... quite a long time. 15. Are you doing anything special... the week-end? 16. There was a storm ... the night: it rained ... three or four hours. 17. The film started ... seven and ended ... nine. 18. Sorry, I haven't written to you ... such a long time. 19. The wedding took place ... the middle of June. 20. We'll arrive in New York ... three hours. 21. He's going to stay in Paris ... more than a week. 22. He phoned me just ... you left. 23. He came to London ... 13th June. 24. They hope to finish work... Thursday next week. 25. I've been sitting here ... 9 o'clock, but no one has phoned yet. 26. We waited ... half past nine but he didn't come. 27. I saw Sue ... my visit to London.

B. I.I went skiing ... Christmas. We flew from Heathrow ... 4 o'clock ... the afternoon ... 20th December, and got to Salzburg ... the early evening. The roads were icy, and we didn't get to the hotel ... 2 o'clock ... the morning. Unfortunately, I fell and hurt my leg ... the first day, and had to spend a few days in bed. But I got up ... Christmas Day and . the next morning I went skiing again, but I wasn't very good at it.

2. I was born in Manchester ... the late 1940s. I went to university ... 1967. I had a good time there, especially ... my last year. So a few months ago I decided to go back and see it again. I went... the end of June. The students were all on holiday, and the town was full of tourists, as it always is ... summer, and I didn't enjoy my visit very much. It wasn't the same as it had been ... the 60s, when I was a student there.

3. A: How long have you been here?

B: ... Saturday. I've only been in the States ... a couple of months.

A: Really? You haven't been very long. How long have you studied English? Your English is very good.

B: I've studied English ... about ten years ... I was thirteen.

A: Well, I've studied Spanish ... I was in the eighth grade, and I still can't speak it!

6.2. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE

6.2.1. Study the following examples.

*There's a lamp **above** the table.*

*Write your names **at** the top of the page.*

*Let's meet **at** the cinema/**at** the theatre/**at** my place.*

*I meet her **at/on** the corner of the street almost every morning.*

*She is sitting **between** Mike and Peter. The house is situated **by** a small river.*

*A bird is singing **in** the tree.*

*There are a few clouds **in** the sky.*

*There isn't a TV set **in** my room.*

*She's sitting **in** an armchair/**on** a chair/**at** the table.*

*There's a fountain **in** the middle of the square.*

*I live **in** Central Avenue not far from the station.*

*She lives **in** a small town in the north of England.*

*She is **in** bed/**in** hospital/**at** work/**at** home/**at** school/**at** university.*

*There's a park **in** the picture.*

*The armchair is **in** the corner of the room.*

*Laura lives in a two-room flat **on** the third floor.*

*Kate is sitting **in front of/behind/opposite** Mike.*

*In England they drive **on** the left.*

*There's always so much work **on** a farm (but: in a field).*

*A piece of paper was stuck **over/below** the picture.*

*Finland is **to** the north of Russia.*

*dropped the pen **under** the table.*

6.2.2. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We have a nice flat... the centre of Moscow. 2. Shall we meet.... your place? 3. There are a lot of places of interest ... this part of the city. 4. I found this baby bird ... the foot of a tree. 5. I usually sit... this armchair. It's very comfortable. 6. I couldn't see much ... the theatre. There was a fat man sitting ... me. 7. It can be dangerous when children play football ... the street. 8. Coffee will be served ... the dining-room. 9. Scotland lies ... the north of England. 10. What's going on ... the corner of the street? 11. I won't be ... home tomorrow. I'll be ... Ann's. 12. The Alps are ... the south of Europe. 13. The train was ... the platform. 14. They waited _ the station for a long time. 15. Don't you remember Jane? She's the girl we met... Oxford Street last week. 16. Don't sit... that chair. It's broken. 17. It's dinner time. The family are ... the table. 18. The weather is sunny. There isn't a single cloud ... the sky. 19. I found a coin ... the floor ... the sofa. 20. My friend works ... a chemist's ... the town centre. 21. My grandparents live ... 42 London Road,... a flat... the top floor. 22. We were driving along Harbour Street when the car ... us stopped suddenly and we crashed into it. 23. Do you know where the cafe is? - It's ... the bank and the school. 24. I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting ... the desk.

6.3. PREPOSITIONS OF DIRECTION AND MOVEMENT

6.3.1. Study the following examples.

*Drive **along** the road.*

*We walked **across** the bridge to the other side of the river.*

*The train arrives **at** the station/**in** Minsk in an hour.*

*When is he leaving **for** Italy?*

*They are flying **from** Amsterdam **to** Paris tomorrow.*

*He took the keys **from** the table/**out of** the bag.*

*Come **into** the house. It's cold outside.*

*He got **into** the car and drove away.*

*He got **off** the bus at the wrong bus-stop.*

*He got **on** his bicycle and rode away.*
*Turn left when you come **out of** the wood.*
*I am going **to** the seaside for the weekend.*
*I have never been **to** Rome but I've been to Paris.*
*The children ran **up** and **down** the stairs.*

6.3.2. Complete the sentences.

1. Ships come ... the port of Cardiff ... all parts of the world. 2. May I come ... your lecture? 3. He lost his key and had to climb ... the house through the window. 4. She returned ... Moscow after a month at the Black Sea. 5. My son is going ... school next year. 6. Will they take the child ... hospital? 7. It was almost midnight when we arrived ... the station. 8. They are leaving ... Japan next Tuesday. They will stay for a fortnight in Tokyo. 9. As soon as you arrive ... London give me a call. 10. If the weather stays fine we shall go ... the seaside for the weekend. 11. When we arrived ... the airport we went directly ... our hotel by taxi. 12. I've been ... Canada but I haven't been ... Africa. 13. I was going ... Berlin on business when, by accident, I got... the wrong train. 14. He got... the car and started the engine. 15. My brother has been ... Paris three times. 16. When I came ... the hotel room I started to take my clothes.....my suitcase. 17. Robert came.....the telephone box and got... his car. 18. When the letters arrive ... the local post office, the daily deliveries are made. 19. Who was the first person to swim ... the English Channel? 20. We walked ... to the top floor. 21. She'll go ... college if she gets good grades in her exams. 22. Mrs. Wood got... the bus and walked ... the street towards the post office.

6.4. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE MEANING OF POSSESSION, REFERENCE AND IDENTIFICATION

6.4.1. Study the following examples.

*I have a personal **reason for not going** there.*
*Her nephew was a little **boy of five**.*
*His wife is a **teacher of biology**.*
*This is a **photograph of my parents**.*
*Her daughter was a good-looking **woman of about 25**.*
*Have you read any **books by Jack London**?*
*They are trying to find a **solution to the problem**.*
*I haven't received a **reply to my letter/an answer to my question**.*
*Have you got the **key to the back door**?*
*Did you get an **invitation to the party**?*

6.4.2. Complete the following sentences.

1. I've never met Carol but I've seen a photograph ... her. 2. The cause ... the fire in the hotel last night is still unknown. 3. Ann showed me the photograph ... the hotel where she stayed during her holiday. 4. He turned out to be a handsome man ... about 30. 5. Have you seen the picture ... the town as it looked 1000 years ago? 6. His name was written on the cover... the book. 7. Nobody knows the cause ... the accident. 8. The job ... a pilot is very demanding. 9. We could hear the noise ... the passing traffic. 10. The legs ... the trousers were too long. 11. Hamlet was written ... Shakespeare. 12. I can't find any solution ... this problem. 13. This is a picture ... their country house. 14. None of them got the invitation ... the garden party. 15. I'm afraid I've lost the key ... the back door. 16. I don't like the idea ... staying in town on such a hot day. 17. The tomb ... Tutankhamun was discovered in Egypt in 1922. 18. A galaxy is a collection ... millions ... stars. 19. I can't think of an answer ... your question. 20. I have written several times but I haven't received a reply ... my letters. 21. He says he has never seen any paintings ... Turner. 22. Emily didn't give us a convincing reason ... not coming to the party.

6.5. PREPOSITIONS WITH NOUNS AS ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS

6.5.1. Study the use of prepositions with adverbial modifiers after verbs.

*He was very reluctant to do it **at first**, but **in the end** he agreed.*
*The car came round the corner **at full speed**.*
*He's a doctor **by profession**.*
*He's very shy **by nature**.*
*They met **by chance**.*
*Sorry, I did it **by mistake**.*
*The teacher knew all the pupils **by name**.*
*They decided to go to Bristol **by sea (by bus, by train, by air)**.*
*I go to work **by bus/by tram/by taxi/by car**.*
*I'd like to go to France for **a holiday/on holiday**.*
*What would you like to have for **breakfast (supper,dinner, lunch)**?*
*The rain has stopped. Let's go for **a walk**.*
*I went to work **in my car**.*
*I like walking **in the rain**.*
*He spoke **in a loud voice** so that everybody could hear him.*
*You are not allowed to write **in pencil**. You must write **in ink**.*

*It's not far. We can go there **on foot**.*

*He went to Japan **on business**.*

*I've never met her. I've only spoken to her **on the phone**.*

*I listened to the news **on the radio**.*

*I saw a very interesting film **on television** last night.*

*The London train arrived **on time** at 8.30. (But We ran all the way to the station and were just in **time** to catch the train.)*

*She cut the bread **with a knife**.*

6.5-2. Complete the following sentences.

1.1 think you can get there ... bus. 2. We were just... time to see the Queen arrive. 3. We met at the station ... chance. 4. Can I get to Yalta ... sea? 5.1 only had a cup of coffee ... breakfast. 6. She sent a parcel ... post. 7. You must write your name ... ink. 8.1 took Tom's hat... mistake. 9. We still have some time. Let's go ... foot. 10. Cut the cake ... a knife. 11. He began to speak ... a low voice. 13. I picked up the wrong suitcase at the airport... mistake. 14. Is there anything interesting ... television tonight? 15. The journey takes ten minutes... bus and about 25 minutes... foot. 16. Robert didn't come to work ... his car yesterday. His car had broken down and he had to come ... taxi. 17. Statistically, the safest way of travelling is ... air. 18.1 know him ... name, but I've never actually seen him. 19. Nobody wanted to buy his car, so ... the end he had to give it away. 20. She isn't here this week. She's gone to Canada ... business. 21. Violent films should not be shown ... television. 22. We decided to travel to Australia ... boat. 23. Don't write to me between 2 and 16 June. I'll be ... holiday then. 24. It annoys me when he starts to speak ... such a loud voice. 25. The chairman wants the conference to start exactly ... time. 26. It's Mrs. Blake ... the phone. She says it's urgent. 27. Be careful if you are walking home... the dark.

6.6. PREPOSITIONS BEFORE A NOUN USED AS AN OBJECT

6.6.1. Study the use of prepositions with an object after the following verbs.

Never ask for money you have not earned.

I think we 'd better apologize to them for waking them up.

Who does this house belong to?

Mike borrowed \$15 from me.

She complained to the manager about the poor working conditions. (But: She complained to me of a headache.)

Don't look out of the window. Concentrate on your work.

The report consisted of two parts. Have you heard about Peter? He got married last month.

Have you ever heard of William Thackeray?

I haven't heard from him for a month.

A strange thing happened to me last night.

The teacher had to explain the grammar rule to the pupil again.

She insisted on our staying to lunch.

They invited us to their house for lunch.

Everyone laughed at his joke.

I usually listen to the news on the radio.

They lived on bread and butter for weeks.

Look at the rainbow. Isn't it beautiful?

I have looked for the book everywhere but I can't find it.

Don't worry. I shall look after the children.

I looked through the magazines while

I waited for you.

Your party prevented everybody from sleeping last night.

Jane reminds me of a girl I was at school with.

She was shivering with cold.

His sister is suffering from allergy.

Has anyone sent for a doctor?

Can I speak to the manager, please?

How much do you spend on clothes?

I talked to her half an hour ago.

Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

We are thinking of going out tonight, (-have an idea)

What do you think of this play? (=have an opinion)

Before giving a final answer, think carefully about what I said, (consider, concentrate the mind on)

Don't worry about lunch. It 'll be ready in a moment.

Sorry I haven't written to you for such a long time.

6.6.2. Complete the following sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We had to send ... an electrician to mend the switch. 2. I'm in a hurry. John is waiting... me at the University. 3.1 looked ... my dog everywhere but couldn't find it. 4. He's very selfish. He only thinks ... himself. 5. Can you explain ... me what you mean? 6. The man sitting opposite me kept looking ... me. 7. It didn't occur to me to ask him ... the

proof of his identity. 8. The police are looking... the boy who disappeared from home last week. 9. I'm thinking ... the children. How can we help them? 10. We spent the evening listening ... music. 11. His books have been translated ... many languages. 12. We waited ... Jim for half an hour but he didn't come. 13. He looked ... his watch everywhere but he didn't find it. 14. I don't think much ... this show. 15. What are you laughing ...? I can't understand what's funny. 16. Who looked ... you when you were ill? 17. When I looked ... my watch, I couldn't believe that it was so late. 18. I am looking ... Tom. Have you seen him anywhere? 19. It isn't my car. It belongs ... Mike. 20. I apologize ... breaking your drill. 21. A baby-sitter was looking ... the children while they went to the cinema. 22. I'm sorry for being late. I had to look ... my camera. 23. He complained ... the manager ... the poor service at the restaurant. 24. I can't concentrate ... anything at the moment. 25. I borrowed an umbrella ... a friend of mine. 26. I insist... knowing what happened. 27. I'm looking ... a present for Laura. Can you think ... anything? 28. You can't accuse me ... laziness. 29. I can't think ... any reason why the accident happened. 30. You look sad. What are you thinking ...? 31. She listened ... my story sympathetically. 32. Doesn't he have a job? What does he live ...? 33. He asked me to look ... the document and then sign it. 34. I've been looking ... a cup to match the one I broke. 35. I am afraid he has never heard ... Michaelangelo. 36. I haven't heard ... Sarah yet. I hope she will write soon. 37. I am bored. Can't you think ... something we can do?

6.7. PREPOSITIONS WITH AN OBJECT AFTER VERBAL PHRASES (UNITS)

6.7.1. Study the use of prepositions in these verbal phrases.

*He seems not to **be afraid of** anything.*

*Don't **be angry with** me. I did it by mistake.*

***He is not ashamed of** what he did. In fact he **seems to be proud of** it.*

*Everyone **was astonished/surprised/shocked by/at** the news.*

*The children were thrilled to see that the ground **was covered with** snow.*

*The bus **was crowded with** people.*

***He was disappointed/satisfied/pleased with** the examination results.*

***He fell ill with** pneumonia and had to stay in bed.*

*This town **is famous for** its hand-woven carpets.*

***Are you fond of** classical music?*

*It's not easy to **get rid of** bad habits.*

*I'm afraid I am not very **good at** dancing.*

***I'm grateful to you for** all your help.*

*Everyone **was impressed by/with** the performance.*

*I don't think he **is interested in** football.*

***I'm not very keen on** going out tonight.*

*Don't **be late for** classes.*

***I am looking forward to** seeing you in September.*

***It was nice/kind/generous/clever of him to** act like that.*

***It was mean/stupid/rude of him to** act like that.*

*What **is** the tray **made of**?*

*He's **married to** his friend's sister.*

*She **looks very pleased with** herself.*

*The film **was not popular with** the public.*

*The Browns **seem to be proud of** their son.*

*Brazil **is rich in** minerals.*

*Who **is responsible for** the children?*

*He **can't be so rude to** people.*

*We've **run out of** bread.*

*The teacher **was satisfied with** the pupil's answer.*

***I am sorry for** the animals in a cage.*

*He said he **was sorry about** breaking the window.*

*I'm **a bit short of** money. Can you lend me some?*

***I shall take care of** the flowers while you are away.*

***It's typical of him to** behave like that.*

***I'm tired of getting up** early every day.*

***I'm not used to** driving on the left.*

***I'm worried/upset/anxious about** the present situation.*

6.7.2. Complete the following sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. What is he afraid ...? 2. If you are interested ... literature you may join our literary society. 3. Kate is very good ... English. 4. Is she still afraid... darkness? 5. My mother was angry ... me for my bad behaviour. 6. The Welsh are very proud ... their language. 7. Ann is fond ... her younger brother. 8. Do you think your teachers had much influence ... you? 9. Paul is getting anxious ... his future career. 10. Hurry up or you'll be late ... the plane. 11. Jane is 16 and she speaks two foreign languages. Her parents are very proud ... her. 12. He is used ... getting up early. 13. Many people are fond ... winter sports. 14. The manager was satisfied ... Bill's work and offered him a pay rise. 15.

He is interested ... foreign languages. 16. I was late ... the office again this morning; that is why the boss seems to be angry... me. 17. His garden is very well kept and he is very proud ... it. 18. He is married ... Cathleen and has three children. 19. Children are usually fond ... sweet things. 20. Nick is ill... the flu. He won't be coming tonight. 21. Sydney in Australia is famous ... its Opera House. 22. You are very good ... explaining things. 23. Are you worried ... your driving test? 24. I'm tired ... eating potatoes every day. Why can't we have rice for a change? 25. To tell you the truth, I'm not very keen... seeing him again. 26. If you are not satisfied ... the service at the hotel, you should complain to the manager. 27. I'm surprised ... you, forgetting your briefcase like that. 28. It was good ... you to help Dave with his homework. 29. The public is taking a lot of interest ... the new courses offered by the Open University. 30. We're angry ... Alex for letting us down. 31. He's quite nice but I wouldn't like to be married ... him. 32. The pudding was made ... fruit and chocolate. 33. Are you familiar ... this type of machine? 34. His essay is full... mistakes. 35. The jury found him guilty ... murder.

6.8. PHRASAL VERBS

6.8.1. Study the use of the following phrasal verbs.

When did the first world war **break out**?

She was **brought up** in the country.

Have you **called on** Mrs. Price? (-Have you visited Mrs. Price?)

Margaret **came across** those old books in the attic.

The Parliament **carried out** the Prime Minister's order.

The rain stopped and the sky **cleared up**.

In the end we **found out** the truth.

How does she **get on** with her brother?

We shall have to **get up** early tomorrow.

You should **give up** smoking.

When he **grows up** he wants to become a pilot.

Go (keep) on writing.

There were a few words that I didn't understand, so I **looked** them **up** in my dictionary.

It was very dark. We couldn't **make out** anything.

The meeting was put off until the following week.

She only **puts on** a hat when she goes to a wedding.

Ann **ran into** a former school classmate last week.

I won't be able to join you tonight. I'm **seeing off** my friend.

Speak up! I can't hear you.

People say I **take after** my father.

It's getting dark. **Turn (switch) on** the light.

It's still dark in the room. Don't **turn (switch) off** the light.

It's warm here. **Take off** your coat.

Won't you consider my proposals? - Well, I'll **think them over** and let you know.

Why **don't you throw away** these old newspapers?

She had **tried on** about ten pairs of shoes before she made her final choice.

When she **woke up** it was still dark.

He told me to **write down** his address.

6.8.2. Complete the following sentences with the correct prepositions and postpositions.

1. Don't turn ... the radio. Father is working. 2. Take... your jacket. It's hot here. 3. Before you leave the house make sure that you have turned ... the gas and electricity. 4. It's getting dark. Shall I turn ... the light? 5. Wake me ... in half an hour. 6. I'm afraid we'll have to put... the meeting. 7. They bring ... their children very properly. 8. The children are asleep. Don't wake them 9. I tried ... the jacket to see if it fitted me. 10. If you come across new words look them ... in the dictionary. 11. The teacher told the pupils to write ... their homework. 12. The weather's horrible, isn't it? I hope it'll clear ... later. 13. I can't hear you very well. Can you speak ... a bit? 14. The children have grown ... since I saw them last. 15. I was so tired that I couldn't get... in the morning. 16. We often call... our next door neighbours. 17. I came ... this photograph by accident when I was clearing the attic. 18. Robert gave ... playing football years ago. 19. Did anyone find ... what their new address is? 20. Can you read the inscription? - No, I can't make it.... 21. When you are learning a new language you often have to look ... new words in the dictionary. 22. The epidemic broke ... in the early part of January. 23. I'm sure they will carry ... the project. 24. The housing development was put ... because of the increased expenses. 25. They turn ... the street lights at the same time every morning. 26. He doesn't get ... with his family. That's why he doesn't live at home. 27. He wanted to talk to me but I

kept... working and refused to listen. 28. He takes ... his mother; he has blue eyes and fair hair too. 29. After his fourth attempt he gave ... trying to pass the driving test. 30. You can throw ... the packet; it's empty. 31. We went to see them ... at the station and waved till the train was out of sight. 32. Without my glasses I can hardly make ... the words on the page. 33. They decided to put... their wedding until the summer. 34. They've gone to the airport to see their daughter

6. 9. 2. Insert the correct prepositions where necessary.

1. Sandra was ... bed. She waited ... the postman to arrive. While she lay there she was thinking ... the application she had made for the scholarship. Suddenly she got... , put... her dressing gown and went... the bathroom. While she was having a shower she heard the postman. He knocked ... the door and her mother opened it. When Sandra entered ... the breakfast room, a letter was lying ... the table.

2 I'm a member ... a group who spend weekends looking ... footpaths, building walls and planting trees. We are not paid what we do but we enjoy it very much. You don't need any previous experience but it helps if you are fond ... gardening. The most attractive thing about it is that you meet ... other people interested ... nature and preserving the countryside.

3. We were late as usual. My husband had insisted ... doing his packing ... himself, and when he discovered that he couldn't manage he'd asked me ... help ... the last moment. So we had an hour to get... the airport. Luckily, there wasn't much traffic ... the road and we were able to get there just... time.

4. Archeologists and historians are more and more worried ... the Italian city ... Venice, one ... the world's most important historical cities. Venice, built... the seventeenth century ... the Doges of Venice, is visited ... more than one million people ... a year. But Venice's buildings are ... danger. Their foundations are shaken... the vibrations from passing ships. Many parts ... the city are often flooded and these floods cause damage too. Worried residents and experts ... all over the world are looking ... ways to stop the damage and preserve Venice.

5. Unexpected guests are good ... you. The phone rings, the friends you haven't seen ... ages are arriving ... a few hours, and you realize ... horror that you haven't changed the sheets ... the spare bedrooms ... months, that all the dirty dishes have been ... the sink since the weekend, and that you've been wearing the same frock ... three days.

6. Last year I went... a trip which was an absolute disaster. I was going to Berlin ... business when, ... accident, I got ... the wrong train. We were ... the way to Brussels before I realized my mistake. ... the end I got... Berlin twenty-four hours later than I had expected.

7. Last year my family went... holiday to Thailand. We went ... air; it was a very long journey but we were very well looked after ... the plane ... all the stewardesses. We stayed ... a large hotel... the outskirts of Bangkok. We were given a wonderful suite ... the top floor ... the hotel. The most enjoyable day I had was when we went... a trip ... boat, down the river to the crocodile farm. We had a wonderful holiday.

7. WORD FORMATION

7.1. STUDY THE TYPICAL SUFFIXES WHICH FORM NOUNS FROM VERBS.

| | | | |
|----------------|---|---------------|---|
| - age -al | pass - passage arrive - arrival | - ment - sion | improve - improvement divide - division |
| - ance - ation | appear - appearance admire - admiration | - tion - ure | invent - invention fail - failure |
| - ence - ion | differ - difference confuse - confusion | - y - ee | recover - recovery employ - employee |

Study the following list of nouns formed from verbs which do not follow the above patterns.

advise - advice behave - behaviour believe - belief

choose - choice complain - complaint die - death

fly - flight grow - growth hate - hatred know - knowledge live - life lose - loss

practise - practice prove - proof serve - service 'speak - speech think - thought weigh - weight

7.1.1. Make nouns from the following verbs. Check your variants with the dictionary.

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| admit | develop | interrupt | protect |
| advertise | disappoint | introduce | propose |
| announce | discover | invade | punish |
| apologize | divide | invent | qualify |
| apply | educate | hesitate | receive |
| appoint | elect | marry | recognize |
| approve | employ | mix | refer |
| arrange | enter | operate | refuse |
| attend | entertain | pass | repeat |
| celebrate | exist | perform | revise |
| combine | explain | permit | satisfy |
| continue | imagine | possess | solve |

| | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|-----------|
| confess | imitate | prefer | suggest |
| depart | improve | prepare | translate |
| describe | impress | produce | treat |

7.1.2. Complete the sentences using nouns formed from the verbs in brackets.

- The ... of America was made in 1492 by Christopher Columbus, (discover)
- I can't tell the ... between butter and margarine, (differ)
- Susie takes after her father in (appear)
- The staff at this hotel is excellent. They give very good (serve)
- The ... to the park is through the gate over there, (enter)
- The American ... of this word is different from the British, (use)
- We'll have to stay at this hotel. There's no (choose)
- You need more ... if you want to speak good English, (practise)
- The police said they were awaiting further (develop)
- He can't get over the ... of so much money, (lose)
- She accepted his ... for his rude behaviour at dinner, (apologize)
- There is a... at the bottom of the letter, but I can't make it out. (sign)
- I made an ... to see the dentist tomorrow, (appoint)
- The film didn't come up to our ... at all. (expect)
- It will be very helpful if you continue your (investigate)
- She has a very wide ... of modern arts, (know)
- The police suspect him of being guilty but they have no (prove)
- The government is due to announce its economic ... shortly, (propose)
- The college expects a high standard of... from its students, (behave)
- Three boys in the school had the same name, which caused some.... (confuse)
- My uncle was given a medal in ... of his service, (recognize)
- This is the city's... district, full of cinemas and theatres, (entertain)
- Can I see the manager? I have a ... about my room, (complain)
- We should be ready for the ... at 5 sharp, (depart)
- I can't give my ... today because I've got a sore throat, (speak)
- He considered himself a He hadn't succeeded in anything, (fail)

7.2. STUDY THE TYPICAL SUFFIXES WHICH FORM NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES

| | | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|-------|------------------------|
| _ance | important - importance | -ity | popular - popularity |
| -cy | vacant - vacancy | -ment | excited - excitement |
| _ence | silent - silence | -ty | necessary - necessity |
| -ion | attractive - attraction | -y | difficult - difficulty |
| _ (i)ness | lazy — laziness | | |
| | kind - kindness | | |

The nouns formed from adjectives in the list below do not follow the above patterns.

deep - depth free - freedom high - height hot - heat
 long - length poor - poverty proud - pride strong - strength
 young - youth warm - warmth wide - width wise - wisdom

7.2.1. Make nouns from the following adjectives. Check your variants with the dictionary.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|---------|
| absent | elegant | happy | safe |
| beautiful | equal | patient | shy |
| certain | fluent | perfect | stupid |
| confident | foolish | popular | tidy |
| convenient | frequent | possible | ugly |
| cruel | generous | present | violent |
| curious | ill | quiet | vacant |
| dark | important | real | weak |
| difficult | independent | sad | wicked |

7.2.2. Complete the sentences using nouns formed from the adjectives in brackets.

- ... is one of the world's great problems, (poor)
- I think it shows ... of character to admit you are wrong, (strong)
- Summer came and the ... became quite oppressive, (hot)
- I was told that you have a ... for a computer operator, (vacant)
- He was delighted by the ... of the welcome he received, (warm)
- ... is the mother of invention, (necessary)
- ... on the screen is one of the most topical issues, (violent)
- If you want to find a good job you should gain more (confident)
- The ... of the water in this lake is more than twelve metres, (deep)
- He is famous for his He gives large sums of money to charity, (generous)

11. I am sure that his ... was caused by overwork, (ill)
12. After staying in England for a couple of months he spoke English with greater (fluent)
13. Please have a little We'll have to wait for another hour, (patient)
14. The ... of this bus service is about one every ten minutes, (frequent)
15. Though it was his first visit to the town he found the right hotel without any (difficult)
16. According to a survey, the ... of this television channel has increased over the last three months, (popular)
17. My uncle is a figure of some ... in the academic world, (important)
18. I will always remember the ... of the welcome I received in your country, (warm)
19. To bring up children to be normal, well-adjusted human beings requires great and perhaps a bit of luck, (wise)
20. In the ... we couldn't make out if there was anyone at the entrance, (dark)

7.3. STUDY THE TYPICAL SUFFIXES WHICH FORM ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS AND VERBS

| | | | |
|----------|---|--------|-------------------------|
| - ic | energy - energetic | - able | to break - breakable |
| - (ic)al | practice - practical profession - professional | - ive | to attract - attractive |
| - ous | danger - dangerous | | |
| - y | rain - rainy | | |
| -ly | friend - friendly | | |

Note the meaning of the suffixes *-ful* and *-less*.

-ful means 'having', 'with', e.g. beautiful, careful, harmful, peaceful, successful, useful.

-less means 'without', 'lacking', e.g. careless, friendless, harmless, homeless, useless.

Note that the suffix *-ly* is used both in adverbs and adjectives. See Part I, 5.

7.3.1. Make adjectives from the following nouns and verbs.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------|-----------|------------|
| agriculture | fashion | nerve | to create |
| alphabet | health | science | to cure |
| ambition | honest | thirst | to decide |
| anger | humour | week | to enjoy |
| comfort | hunger | year | to protect |
| courage | luck | to advise | to respect |
| democracy | music | to agree | to value |
| fame | mystery | to change | |

7.3.2. Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns and verbs in brackets.

1. Those wires look a bit.... If I were you I would be more careful, (danger)
2. English weather is very It's often different from day to day. (change)
3. Long leather boots were extremely ... at one time, (fashion)
4. The country exports ... over two million tons of rice, (year)
5. Until the situation has settled down, it is not ... to travel to that country, (advise)
6. He's looking forward to starting his new job, but at the same time he's a bit.... (nerve)
7. I'm very pleased with my job. It's a very ... company to work in. (friend)
8. I think people who help the old, sick and ... are the salt of the earth, (home)
9. He's not very What he needs is someone to look after him and do everything for him. (care)
10. Jack is always in trouble though the rest of the family are ..., honest people, (respect)
11. The report which doesn't contain all the necessary facts is ... and makes a bad impression, (use)
12. A lot of people wear jeans and sweaters because they are cheap and (practice)
13. Smoking is ... to health and in many countries a warning is printed on every packet of cigarettes, (harm)
14. A taxi, sometimes called a cab, is the most ... way of travel, (comfort)
15. Everybody drank a toast to the future ... of the young couple, (happy)
16. The magazine was full of stories of the private lives of ... people, (fame)
17. Disabled people sometimes have ... in coping with public transport, (difficult)
18. Jack was very proud. He got a new job with more money and (responsible)
19. Pack the glasses carefully. They're (break)
20. I think it's ... to book rooms in a hotel in advance, (advise)
21. Firemen wear... clothing, otherwise they would get burnt, (protect)
22. My sister is a very... person. She paints and makes sculptures, (create)
23. The two countries signed an agreement on trade and ... cooperation, (culture)

7.4. STUDY THE NEGATIVE PREFIXES WHICH ARE USED WITH DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH

Note that the prefixes *dis-*, *il-*, *im-*, *in-*, *ir-*, *un-* make words opposite in meaning to the original words.

E.g. *to obey* - *to disobey*, *legal* - *illegal*, *patient* - *impatient*, *definite* - *indefinite*, *regular* - *irregular*, *lucky* - *unlucky*.

7.4.1. Change the meaning of the following words from positive into negative by using one of the above

prefixes.

| | | | |
|-------------|----------|------------|---------|
| comfortable | honest | tidy | to like |
| dependent | literate | usual | to load |
| educated | polite | to agree | to tie |
| friendly | popular | to appear | |
| happy | possible | to approve | |

7.4.2. Put one of the above prefixes in each space to make the word which follows opposite in meaning.

1. It is the most... believable story I've ever heard.
2. I am afraid this is a very ... convenient arrangement.
3. The country became ... dependent soon after the end of World War II.
4. My parents ... approve of early marriages.
5. John left his job because he was ... able to deal with such a large amount of work.
6. When the ambulance came, the man was ... conscious after being knocked down by a car.
7. It's his first job and he is very ... experienced.
8. We had a long talk but we still... agree on a number of points.
9. Last summer I stayed in Paris for two weeks. It was an ... forgettable experience.
10. It was dark in the corridor and it took us ages to ... lock the door.
11. The sitting-room looks ... tidy after last night's party.
12. Sailing in a boat during the storm was a very ... pleasant experience.
13. The weather is ... usually warm for this time of the year.
14. He's usually rather ... patient and ... friendly, but I must say he was very sympathetic when I told him about my family problems.
15. He just can't stop talking. He goes on and on about totally... important things.
16. We were surprised that he ... appeared without saying a word to his friends.
17. Some of the spectators ... agreed with the referee's decision.
18. The English verbs fall into two groups: regular and ... regular verbs.
19. It is ... legal to bring goods into a country without paying tax.
20. I wouldn't like to share a flat with an ... tidy person.

7 4.3- Mixed practice.

Use the words given in capitals at the end of each form a word that fits in the space in proper line.

A-

Architects responsible for the_____ot many CONSTRUCT
skyscrapers believe that a tall building must
always have a certain minimum_____but that WIDE
there is no limit to its absolute_____. This HIGH
means that the skyscrapers of the future are likely to be even taller.
Engineers agree with this, but there is_____ AGREE
over the best shape for very tall, slim buildings.
The effects of wind_____mean that cylindrical PRESS
designs have enjoyed some_____in recent POPULAR
years, and these are quite pleasing to the eye.
Would these tall buildings of the future offer
more than a_____view? Some believe tall WONDER
towers could contain all the_____for modern REQUIRE
living. The_____of these vertical villages INHABIT
would travel up and down between their home
and work zones and would_____need to RARE
journey to the ground level.

B.

The site of the town of Winchester was a_____ NATURE
place for a_____, at the point where a river SETTLE
cut through the chalk of the_____hillsides. SOUTH
A simple camp at St Catherine's Hill was the
_____known use of the site. It was the Romans EARLY
who finally established the town and_____it ROUND
with a defensive wall for the protection of their people and trade.
With the_____of its first cathedral in the BUILD
seventh century, the town became an important
_____centre. Later, King Alfred, who had RELIGION
_____pushed back the invading Danes, moved SUCCESS
his palace to Winchester. The town then experienced rapid_____, and its _____role in DEVELOP CENTRE
English history was underlined in 1066 when the conquering Normans, like Alfred, made Winchester their capital.

8. WORD ORDER

8.1. TYPICAL SCHEMES AND EXAMPLES OF WORD ORDER IN DIFFERENT TYPES OF QUESTIONS

A. General questions

| | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------|--------|--------------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| auxiliary verb | subject group | main verb | object | adverbial modifier |

Is the man smoking a pipe?

Have you given up smoking?

May I have a look at your photos?

Do you remember our trip to Brussels?

Did it rain last night?

Was anyone late for the meeting?

Is there any money in the box?

B. Special questions

All types of special questions except questions about the subject of the sentence

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------|--------|--------------------|
| -1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| interrogative word | auxiliary verb | subject group | main verb | object | adverbial modifier |

Questions about the subject of the sentence

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------|--------|--------------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| interrogative word | predicate | object | adverbial modifier |

Who lives in that old brick house? What are you looking at? What can I do to help you? What is there on the floor?

8.1-1- Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. time/he/on/always/come/his/to/does/classes?
2. you/to/can/evening/airport/this/me/take/the?
3. long/studied/English/how/you/have?
4. English/well/father/as/does/mother/speak/as?
5. delivers/your/in/who/newspaper/morning/the?
6. Kate/for/waiting/is/who?
7. rich/did/want/he/to/and/be/famous?
8. afford/this/can/holiday/a/year/you?
9. an/did/last/accident/he/have/week?
10. married/last/they/get/did/month?
11. told/to/him/before/six o'clock/who/come?
12. the/any/were/iri/photographs/there/bag?
13. sent/doctor/they/have/for/a?
14. listening/the/are/students/what/to?
15. advised/the/police/accident/who/you/tell/about/to/ the?
16. to/ride/like/horse/would/a/you/learn/to?

8.2. STATEMENTS WITH DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS

I'll tell my sister the truth.

I'll tell her the truth.

I'll tell the truth to my sister.

8.2.1. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. to/pass/plate/John/please/the
2. thcm/haven't/told/I/accident/about/the
3. to/children/the/I/taking/Zoo/am/the
4. didnVpockct/elder/to/I/money/son/any/send/my
5. you/if/mind/ask/questions/do/I/some?
6. good/was/idea/it/a/to/him/way/ask/the
7. trying/skates/put/Mr Winkle/was/to/on/his
8. want/from/anything/him/I/to/don't/take
9. director/vvith/his/not/satisfied/the/was/secretary
10. says/him/anything/he/nobody/told
11. got/a/test/the/he/mark/very/for/good
12. me/forget/send/a/to/don't/post-card

8.3. POSITION OF ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS OF PLACE AND TIME IN A SENTENCE

Note that the **place** is usually put before the **time**. *I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night. I've been walking around the town all morning. We learned a lot of things at school today.*

8.3.1. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. the/haven't/since/been/I/last/to/year/theatre
2. don't/to/Sundays/go/on/we/school
3. students/last/meeting/the/to/didn't/Wednesday/come/the
4. evening/the/at/walk/he/for/in/usually/a/goes/five o'clock
5. to/going/London/next/few/am/a/I/days/week/for
6. Sweden/left/ago/she/town/two/her/for/years
7. should/the/to/every/dentist/months/you/go/six
8. I'll/to/tonight/think/early/go/bed/I
9. drives/work/every/to/Ann/car/her/day
10. sure/are/there/by/get/8 o'clock/we/to

3.4. WORD ORDER IN STATEMENTS CONTAINING ADVERBS

He always goes to work by car.

My parents have always lived in London.

I have never seen such a professional performance before.

We are not always late. We are usually on time.

She doesn't usually smoke.

Have you finished writing the letter yet?

He is still writing the letter.

Note: Adverbs of frequency (*always, often, seldom, never, ever, usually, normally, rarely, etc*) and the adverbs *already, almost, hardly, nearly, still* come **after** the **auxiliary verb** but before the **main verb**. In short answers they are put **before the auxiliary**: *She often goes to London on business. - Yes, she often does.*

8.4.1. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. don't/work/on/I/Sundays/usually/to/have
2. has/probably/home/gone/he/early
3. you/take/a/ever/don't/break?
4. this/before/seen/you/ever/have/painting?
5. posted/have/yet/letter/you/the?
6. they/at/talking/about/5 o'clock/were/football/still
7. says/never/late/he/for/is/his/work/he
8. name/I/remember/his/can/never
9. television-set/often/our/down/breaks
10. has/very/always/been/she/generous

8.5. THE ORDER OF ADJECTIVES BEFORE A NOUN

| Position before the noun | Adjectives |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | adjectives that tell you what something is for: an <i>expensive tennis racket</i> |
| 2 | adjectives that say what something is made of: an <i>expensive steel and nylon tennis racket</i> |
| 3 | adjectives which tell you the origin of something where it comes from: <i>Spanish leather sports boots</i> |
| 4 | colour adjectives: <i>black Spanish leather sports boots</i> |
| 5 | adjectives of shape and size: a <i>large red Dutch brick dwelling</i> house |
| 6 | adjectives of age: an <i>old large brown German glass</i> beer-mug |
| 7 | adjectives of overall assessment and quality: a <i>beautiful young tall brown-eyed Italian</i> girl |

8.5.1. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. colour/a/they/bought/new/have/television-set
2. all/liked/the/Italian/I/brown/most/shoes/of
3. chose/blouse/blue/an/she/silky expensive
4. brick/was/house/it/old/an
5. gave/beautiful/few/he/red/her/roses/a

6. jeans/and/man/leather/a/jacket/the/black/wearing/blue/ was
7. a/fair-haired/sister/his/girl/smart/is/young
8. large/eyes/has/Mary/round/got/brown
9. leather/pair/shoes/I/of/new/need/sport/a
10. old/slippers/put/woolen/she/on/her
11. bought/a/I/white/lovely/marble/Turkish/chess set
12. for/a (an)/had/brown/beef/we/dinner/enormous/German/sausage

8.5.2. Put the adjectives in the correct order.

Dear Sir,

I am writing to you because I left a (*leather/large/brown*) suitcase on the 7.45 train to London yesterday. In the suitcase there is a (*plastic/digital/little*) alarm clock and a pair of (*silk/ black/expensive*) pyjamas. There is also a (*lovely/satin/long*) dress, which is a present for my wife, and a (*Chinese/ beautiful/gold*) chain which I would hate to lose. Finally, there is a (*black/leather/plastic*) folder containing confidential government papers, so it is very important that my suitcase is found and returned to me as soon as possible.

Yours faithfully, Paul Daniels

9. TEXT CONNECTORS

9.1. TIME CONNECTORS

after/ before/ when/ as/ while/ as soon as/ since/ till/ until/ then

9.1.1. Study the following examples.

After I got back home I read the letter once again. Christmas will be over **before** you finish the decorations.

When I last saw you, you lived in Washington. I saw him **as** I was getting off the bus. You can't leave **while** we are still discussing this problem. Buy your tickets **as soon as** you reach the station.

Have you flown a kite **since** you were a boy? I'll keep practicing **until (till)** I'm better than he is. Study the rule and **then** do the exercise below.

9.1.2. Choose the correct time connector.

1. *While/when* I had locked all the doors I went to bed. 2. He fell off the chair *while/until* he was changing the light bulb. 3. They waited *when/until* everybody was there *before/ until* they started the meeting. 4. I broke my leg *as soon as/ while* I was skating. 5. I'm not going to stop work now. I'll keep going *as soon as/until* I finish. 6.

After/while we've finished lunch we'll do the washing up. 7. *As/till* I was walking around the supermarket I met a friend of mine. 8. *When/whi/e* Jessica finishes her degree she intends to work in her father's company. 9. The man was hit by a car *as soon as/while* he was running across the road. 10. *While/as soon as* Martin saw the fire, he telephoned the fire department. 11. We haven't met *as/since* we attended the conference in Brighton.

9.1.3. Combine the following sentences to show time relationships between the ideas. Make the necessary changes.

1. A small stone struck the windshield. We were driving down the gravel road.
2. Nancy had been jogging for half an hour. She began to feel tired.
3. You won't improve your ability to speak English. You should learn to relax more.
4. I turned off the light. I left the room.
5. I won't return the books to the library. I'll first finish my research project.
6. I'll finish working on the car. We'll all go for a walk.
7. We met last summer. I was studying in London.
8. I'll wait. Someone will get back.
9. I was watching TV. The telephone rang.
10. They arrived at the station. The train had left.

9.2. TEXT CONNECTORS DENOTING CONTRAST

although/ though/ even though/ in spite of/ despite/ but/ however/ nevertheless

9.2.1. Study the following examples.

Although the sands are very long, few people bathe.

The children weren't interested, **although (though)** the donkey rides were attractive.

Even though she disliked jazz she enjoyed the concert.

In spite of (despite) the bad weather we went out for a walk.

She speaks French well **but** my brother speaks better.

Allan seems capable as a financial adviser. **However,** I wouldn't trust him with my money.

Ann's father gave her some good advice, **nevertheless (but)** she did not follow it.

9.2.2. Complete the sentences with one of the connectors denoting contrast.

1. This is a cheap pen,... it writes well. 2....yellow looks good on you, it doesn't look very good on me. 3.1 put on my sunglasses... it was a dark cloudy day. 4. ... she has a job. she doesn't make enough money to support her four children. 5. I'm glad that my mother made me take piano lessons when I was a child ... I hated it at the time. Now I play the piano every day. 6. The earthquake damaged the bridge across the river ... they were able to cross the river in a boat. 7.... I was dead tired, I walked all way home. 8. Bob ate a large dinner ... he is still hungry. 9. I finished all my work ... I was very sleepy. 10.... her doctor warned her, Carol continues to smoke nearly two packs of cigarettes a day.

9.2.3. Combine the following sentences to show the relationship of contrast. Make the necessary changes.

1. A storm was approaching. The climbers continued their trek up the mountains. 2. I washed my hands. They still

looked dirty. 3. I held a lot of studying to do. I went to the cinema anyway. 4. They have a car. They rarely use it. 5. He has a number of relations living nearby. He never visits them. 6. She said she didn't want to change her job. She may change her mind. 7. She doesn't enjoy her job. She works hard. 8. They were late. They didn't hurry. 9. The weather was bad. We enjoyed the outing. 10. David's dad did his best to teach him to drive. David failed his driving test.

9.3. TEXT CONNECTORS DENOTING REASON AND RESULT (CAUSE AND EFFECT) *because/ as/ so/ as a result/ therefore/ that's why/ since*

9.3.1. Study the following examples.

*I bought an umbrella **because** I thought it would rain.*

As it was raining I bought an umbrella.

***Since** it looks as though it might rain. I've bought an umbrella.*

*He was late **so** he ran to the station.*

*It was raining hard, **therefore** we didn't go out.*

*It was raining, **that's why** we stayed at home. We missed the last bus and **as a result** we had to walk all way home.*

9.3.2. Choose the correct connector.

1. As/as a result it was such a beautiful day, we decided to have a picnic.
2. It was his birthday *because/so* we decided to buy him a present.
3. As a result/since all the seats on the train were taken, we had to stand.
4. The banks were closed and *since/as a result* we couldn't get any money.
5. I didn't find the book very interesting *so/as* I didn't finish it.
6. I'm tired out, *as a result/that's why* I am going home.
7. George has got a new job, *because/that's why* he's so pleased with himself.
8. *Since/as a result* a diamond is extremely hard it can be used to cut glass.
9. Jim had to give up jogging *that's why/because* he sprained his ankle.
10. Two of the three factories in our small town have closed, *because/therefore* unemployment is high.

9.3.3. Combine the following sentences to show the relationship of reason and result.

1. I couldn't repair my bicycle. I didn't have the right tools.
2. The post office was closed. I couldn't post my parcels.
3. All of the students have done poorly on the test. The teacher has decided to give it again.
4. We listened to the news on the radio. Our TV set was broken.
5. John has poor eyesight. He has to sit in the front row.
6. Mark is overweight. His doctor has advised him to exercise regularly.
7. The workers have gone on strike. All production has ceased.
8. Let's ask our teacher how to solve this problem. We can't agree on the answer.
9. Sophie broke her leg in two places. She had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.
10. Cars have become more complicated. Mechanics need more training than in the past.

9.3.4. Choose the correct variant.

1. Some people like to sing ... they are taking a bath. A although B after C while
2. I enjoy tennis on TV ... I prefer playing it. A although B despite C since
3. ... she has a well-paid job, she never has any money. A Despite B As C Even though
4. ... she left school she started working in a bank. A Before B After C Since
5. Mike borrowed some money and ... he was able to go on holiday with his parents.
A because B as a result C after
6. She managed to write ... her hand was injured. A despite B although C while
7. The sky was gray and cloudy.... we went to the beach. A Nevertheless B As a result C Despite
8. I've only been to the cinema once... I got out of hospital. A as soon as B until C since
9. ... I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early. A Although B Since C Despite
10. Please walk carefully ... the walkway is slippery. A that's why B because C until
11. ... she seldom eats at home she is good at cooking. A As B Since C Even though
12. John didn't feel well.... he didn't go to work yesterday. A Nevertheless B Therefore C In spite of
13. He insisted that he was right... the fact that everyone disagreed with him. A in spite of B while C though
14. Joe jumped into the river to rescued the little girl who was drowning ... he wasn't a good swimmer.
A even though B despite C since
15. I won't leave ... I find the keys. A while B until C before
16. The sea looked dangerous ... we didn't go in for a swim. A as B so C though

10. WORD CHOICE

10.1. WORDS EASILY CONFUSED

The words in each group below are close in meaning and may even correspond to the same word when translated into Russian (or Belarusian). Despite the similarity they cannot be used to replace one another because each word has a specific (different) meaning. In addition to semantic peculiarities, they may also have syntactical differences. Some *verbs-synonyms*, for example, are followed by a *direct object* in the sentence, while others require an *indirect object*. It is important for a learner of English to know the prepositions that are used with an indirect object after

each verb. Often learners find it difficult to differentiate between parts of speech or forms of the same word, e.g. adverb/adjective; present participle/past participle.

hard/hardly interesting/interested

Confusion can be caused, too, by words different in meaning but having a resemblance in spelling or/and pronunciation"

lose/loose quite/quiet

A. Verbs

bite/beat do/make reach/achieve get/have remember/remind/recall hear/listen (to) forget/leave lie/lay rise/raise wait(for)/expect drive/ride steal/rob lend/borrow pass/take point(to)/show bring/take/fetch go/come/walk fall/drop carry/bear/wear fit/suit/match see/look/watch study/learn/teach speak/say/talk/tell wear/ put on /dress/ to be dressed(in) leave/stay(in, at) suggest/offer sit/sat/seat

B. Adjectives/Adverbs/Conjunctions

happy/lucky easy/light tall/high hard/hardly interesting/interested exciting/excited heavy/difficult/hard empty/free/vacant/spare bare/naked like/as either/too still/yet/already late/lately/(the)latest happily/luckily at least/at last/finally so/such except/besides still/else/other/more

C. Nouns

pair/couple play/game language/tongue place/seat/room/space cook/cooker shade/shadow country/state food/meal hour/clock/o'clock/watch road/street/way/path event/case/incident/accident land/earth/soil

10.2. CHOOSE THE RIGHT WORD

A. Verbs

1. Could you ... these books back to the library next time you go?
a) fetch b) bring c) take
2. My friend ... two hours in the snow for a bus. a) expected b) waited for c) spent
3. It's too noisy here. I can't... anything, a) listen to b) hear c) feel
4. How did your mother ... here so quickly? a) take b) get c) bring
5. Who can it be? I'm not... any visitors, a) waiting for b) expecting c) seeing
6. Please ... her about it as quick as possible. It's urgent. a) talk b) speak c) tell
7. It doesn't... long to get there. a) last b) have c) take
8. This dog is dangerous. It has already ... me. a) beaten b) bitten c) barked
9. He ... he'd be back in an hour. a) spoke b) said c) told
10. Peter ... at the picture hanging over the sofa, a) watched b) saw c) looked
11. We ... to the news every night. a) hear b) expect c) listen
12. You needn't tell me, I... about it yesterday. a) listened b) heard c) recognized
13. I couldn't see who ... by. a) crossed b) passed c) entered
14. If you want to say something ... your hand, a) rise b) put c) raise
15. Mother is ... sandwiches in the kitchen, a) making b) doing c) getting
16. Look after my case. I'll... and pick it up later, a) go b) become c) come
17. He's busy at present. He'll... you in 30 minutes' time, a) watch b) look c) see
18. I'm having difficulty in ... what you say. a) hearing b) listening c) answering
19. My wife wants James to give up tennis and ... law. a) learn b) study c) know
20. We are sorry about the noise we ... last night, a) become b) did c) made
21. They last... to see us at Christmas. a) went b) took c) came
22. I think he ... too hard. a) learns b) studies c) teaches
23. Did you ... to anyone at the conference? a) feel b) say c) speak
24. Can I borrow your car? I'll... it back in an hour. a) carry b) take c) bring
25. I dislike ... housework. a) doing b) making c) acting
26. I'm afraid I've ... my umbrella at home, a) forgotten b) carried c) left
27. I threw myself flat on the bed and... motionless for 10 minutes. a) lied b) lay c) laid
28. I don't think she's ... the truth. a) saying b) talking c) telling
29. I've ... his telephone number. a) forgotten b) left c) carried
30. ... the tent down on the grass and I'll try to see how to put it up. a) lie b) lay c) do
31. They left at ten o'clock, so I ... they'll be here soon. a) wait b) expect c) intend
32. Nothing you do will... any difference. a) do b) become c) make
33. Can you ... me ten pounds until the weekend, please? a) lend b) borrow c) owe
34. Why don't you ... Jack's bicycle? I'm sure he wouldn't mind. a) lend b) borrow c) return
35. Could you ... these letters to the post-office for me? a) bring b) take c) fetch
36. I'm going into hospital soon. Will you ... and visit me? a) go b) come c) arrive
37. No one will... your ring if you put it into the safe, a) rob b) steal c) hide
38. ... me to post the letter when we go past the post-office, a) memorize b) remember c) remind
39. Last night my uncle was stopped and ... of his very valuable watch. a) rob b) steal c) borrow
40. I... seeing him somewhere before. a) remind b) memorize c) remember
41. None of the keys ... the lock. a) match b) fit c) suit
42. We ... she should consult her lawyer. a) suggest b) offer c) intend

43. I'm afraid this job doesn't... me. a) fit b) match c) suit
44. Can you ... me some money till Friday? a) borrow b) lend c) earn
45. I don't think you should buy this dictionary. You can ... one from the library. a) borrow b) lend c) carry
46. She looks happy. She has been ... a job in London. a) offered b) suggested c) proposed
47. I'll ... you my car if you promise to drive it carefully a) borrow b) allow c) lend
48. If you leave your money here it will be a) robbed b) disappeared c) stolen
49. Have you a hat to ... my dress? a) fit b) match c) suit
50. When my neighbour learned that I was ill she ... to take my dog for a walk. a) offered b) suggested c) supposed
51. These colours do not.... a) fit b) match c) suit
52. He worked hard but... very little. a) reached b) achieved c) arrived
53. By the time the travellers ... the village they had got wet through. a) reached b) achieved c) arrived
54. Carol looked happy. She had ... her driving test, a) taken b) passed c) did
55. I won't be able to join you. I am ... my History exam tomorrow. a) taking b) passing c) doing

B. Adjectives, Adverbs, Participles

1. I'm getting on ... with the local people here, a) nice b) good c) well
2. I saw a ... play at the theatre last month, a) well b) good c) best
3. He is much ... than his brother. a) higher b) taller c) more
4. I must stay in bed today. I feel.... a) badly b) well c) bad
5. Sally looks She's won the competition. a) happily b) happy c) happiness
6. Peter speaks ... English. a) good b) well c) nice
7. They laughed.... a) happily b) happy c) happiness
8. No wonder she's won the scholarship. She's worked so ... - a) hardly b) hard c) hardy
9. Ann was ... to pass her entrance exams. She's a student now. a) successful b) merry c) lucky
10. They must have ... one child. a) at all b) at least c) at last
11. Malcolm thinks the exams were dead.... a) light b) easy c) easily
12. ... we found the children in the wood. a) At all b) At last c) At least
13. Peter's pretty ... at tennis, isn't he? a) well b) best c) good
14. Did anyone help you? - No one. I was just... a) happy b) merry c) lucky
15. I prefer to go by sea. Ships do not travel fast, but... you can relax. a) at all b) at least c) at last
16. He convinced us of the need for ... work. a) difficult b) heavy c) hard
17. I wanted to go to Spain, but in the end I went nowhere.... a) at all b) at least c) at last
18. I'm ... in buying new furniture for my lounge, a) interesting b) interest c) interested
19. The story was so ... she couldn't tear herself away from the book. a) excited b) exciting c) excitement
20. Let's stay inside. It's ... raining. a) still b) yet c) already
21. She felt... before the interview. a) excited b) exciting c) excitement
22. I've started to learn Greek, but I haven't got very far... a) still b) yet c) already
23. I haven't heard from my sister... a) late b) lately c) latest
24. At ten o'clock this morning John was ... in bed. a) yet b) still c) already
25. This car uses so much petrol you can ... afford to run it. a) hardly b) hard c) nearly
26. Her mother will be angry if she stays out... a) late b) lately c) latest
27. Let me help you. The suitcase is too ... for you to carry, a) heavy b) difficult c) hard
28. Have you heard the ... news? a) late b) lately c) latest
29. The idea was very ... to the new manager, a) interested b) interesting c) interest
30. The Urals are not as ... as the Alps. a) tall b) long c) high
31. She works ... a guide in one of the tourist agencies, a) as b) like c) as if
32. This white dress looks ... a wedding dress, a) as b) like c) as well
33. This is a nice material. It feels ... silk, a) as b) like c) exactly
34. He is known to his friends ... a very dependable person, a) as b) like c) as though
35. I don't know him very well... .He's just an acquaintance, a) also b) too c) either
36. Ruth is a very sensible girl. She is dependable, a) also b) too c) either
37. Linda is ... efficient and polite to the customers, a) so b) such c) too
38. Fred is ... a good mixer. He's always the centre of any group he's in. a) so b) such c) very
39. Max is good at tennis. He can ... play badminton, a) also b) too c) either

C Nouns

1. Tom has bought a new ... of trousers. a) pair b) couple c) double
2. I worked till six ... last Friday. a) hours b) clocks c) o'clock
3. I ordered some seeds for the garden a ... of days ago. a) pair b) couple c) double
4. I prefer gas... to electric ones. a) cookers b) cooks c) cooking
5. There's a narrow winding... from our village to the next one. a) way b) road c) street
6. Chess is a very slow-... a) game b) play c) act
7. My father is a very good... a) cooker b) cook c) cooking
8. It's a long ... from here to the station, a) way b) road c) street
9. He's going to stage one of Shakespeare's early a) games b) plays c) acts

10. I'm hot. Let's sit in the a) shadow b) shade c) sun
11. It's a science fiction story about a man without a a) shadow b) shade c) umbrella
12. They are used to walking all the ... to school, a) street b) road c) way
13. It was late but we stayed for another.... a) o'clock b) clock c) hour
14. When we entered the hall we discovered that all the ... had been occupied. a) places b) seats c) room
15. The car is too small. There isn't enough ... for four, a) place b) seat c) room
16. The best... for the picture is over the mantelpiece, a) place b) seat c) room
17. BBC broadcasts programmes in several.... a) tongues b) languages c) sounds
18. His mother ... is Welsh. He speaks English with a Welsh accent. a) tongue b) language c) speech
19. A funny ... happened to me at the railway station, a) incident b) accident c) case
20. A few people were injured in a railroad ... yesterday, a) incident b) accident c) case
21. I believe it was a clear ... of carelessness, a) incident b) accident c) case

EVALUATION OF LEARNERS'

SKILLS IN THE USE

OF ENGLISH

1. CLASSIFIED TESTS

TEST 1

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. They (*have*) their English class in the morning today, but normally they (*have*) English classes in the afternoon.
2. The police (*not/find*) the criminal yet.
3. I'm afraid we (*not/reach*) the bus stop in time if we (*walk*) so slowly.
4. I already (*write*) a letter to Brian. I think he (*get*) it in a few days.
5. There was little time left, but they (*drive*) at top speed and (*get*) to the airport in time for the check-out.
6. Peter already (*pack*) his things when Kitty (*come*) to help him. He (*pack*) since morning.

II. Use the right article.

1. ... man had ... blue eyes,... black hair and ... long nose. He was dressed in ... strange uniform.
2. When I was ... child, I never ate ... cheese.
3. Excuse me. Could you tell me... way to ... Picadilly Circus?
4. She always takes ... bath before going to ... bed.
5. Her parents have ... small farm in ... Yorkshire.

III Choose the suitable preposition.

- 1 Thanks for looking (*on, at, after*) me when I was ill.
- 2 People have always been kind (*with, on, to*) me.
- 3 I'm sorry to say but the letter didn't reach (*at, to, -*) me.
- 4 Would you like to go (*to, for, on*) a swim? 5. I'll see you (*at, on, in*) ten days' time.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. She was talking to (*him, himself, oneself*) when the telephone rang.
2. He was angry because they hadn't lent him (*no, some, any*) money.
3. I earn (*fewer, less*) money than a postman.
4. It's (*not, no, neither*) use crying over spilt milk.
5. There isn't (*many, much, plenty*) wine in the bottle.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. someone/build ings/an/is/who/architect/designs.
2. left/the/fire/was/nothing/the/building/of/after.
3. Mary/since/saw/changed/we/last/has/her?
4. please/pass/salt/could/the/you/me?

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. Who's Susan?
 - a) She's a pharmacist.
 - b) She is my cousin.
 - c) She is a smart girl.
3. What's the matter with you?
 - a) I'm a student.
 - b) I've got a stomachache.
 - c) I'm shy.
2. What do you do?
 - a) I'm listening to music.
 - b) I'm a hairdresser.
 - c) I'm James' sister.
4. Can you tell me the way to the market square?
 - a) Sure, it's over there.
 - b) That's all right.

c) Here you are.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

I live in Sweden, but (*every, any*) summer I (*like, would like*) to travel to Britain to visit my family and friends. I hate flying (*so, as*) last summer I decided that for (*a change, an exchange*) I would travel by (*coach, foot*). According to the brochure I was (*given, taken*) at the travel agency the (*journey, voyage*) sounded (*wonderful, wonderfully*), at (*least, last*) in theory. But in fact (*it, there*) was a nightmare from start to (*finish, ending*).

TEST 2

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. It (*be*) a cold winter night. It (*snow*) hard and I (*want*) to get back home quickly.
2. I never (*work*) so hard in my life as now when I (*write*) my diploma-paper.
3. I (*learn*) riding a bike when I (*be*) five years old. I (*ride*) for 20 years already.
4. Where he (*go*) when you (*meet*) him in the morning? -To the library.
5. I never (*wear*) a tie to work and I (*refuse*) to start now.
6. No sooner I (*reach*) the door than I (*realize*) it (*lock*).
7. As I (*cross*) the road I (*see*) Alice coming out of the bookshop. She (*say*) she (*buy*) some English books in the original.

II. Choose the right article.

1. They make ... bread here.
2. He missed ... train. That was ...reason he arrived late.
3. If you heat... water to 100 C it boils.
4. ... man she married had ... red beard.
5. Don't smoke in ... cinema. It's forbidden.
6. At last I've been able to find .. flat.
7. ... people work to earn ... money.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. I used to be afraid (*with, of, by*) dogs.
2. That was the last Christmas I spent (*in, at, on*) home.
3. He was born (*in, on, at*) March 5.
4. Can you play (*on, -, at*) the piano?
5. He often fell (*in, on, with*) love when he was young.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. I have (*little, few, a few*) interest in politics.
2. There are (*not, no, none*) letters for you this morning, sir.
3. I can see you tomorrow, but (*no, neither, not*) on Tuesday or Wednesday.
4. They went on holiday with two friends of (*them, their, theirs*).
5. Would you like some more cheese? - Yes, but only (*a few, a little, few*).

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. tests/Edwards/to/to/go/some/Mr mad/hospital/for.
2. a/spoke/in/he/voice/quiet.
3. understands/who/the/Nora/is/only/me/person.
4. really/as/it/bad/that/is/as?

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. She is not very tidy.
a) And I am not.
b) Nor am I.
c) So am I.
3. Good luck on Monday!
a) Yes, I will.
b) And to you.
c) Thanks a lot.
2. Have a nice weekend!
a) Thanks and the same to you.
b) Don't worry.
c) I will.
4. Jane doesn't like coffee.
a) Me too.
b) Yes, she doesn't.
c) Doesn't she?

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

Ann Jones is one of (*the most, more*) interesting people { have (*ever, even*) met. She is only (25, 25 years) (*but, and*) she has travelled to (*over, more*) 20 countries of the (*world earth*). Five years (*ago, before*) she was a (*typist, type-writer*) in Manchester, but she decided to (*give up, refuse*) her job and (*see, watch*) the world. Since (*then, than*) her life has changed (*perfectly, completely*).

TEST 3

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. If the weather (*keep*) fine we (*stay*) here until the end of the month.
2. She said she already (*buy*) all the Christmas presents.
3. I (*know*) him for seven years. We (*study*) at school together.
4. I (*turn*) round and (*see*) a girl at the far end of the street. She (*call*) for help.
5. What you (*think*) of the chairman's report? - The facts (*sound*) very convincing
6. I don't think the weather (*change*) for the better. But if it (*do*) we (*go*) on an outing.
7. No one knew that David (*do*) research on this problem for nearly two years.

II. Choose the right article.

1. ... robbers had left by ... time the police arrived.
2. What were you doing when you heard ... news?
3. When you are typing ... letter remember to type ... date at... top and to sign your name at... bottom.
4. It's ... best salad I've ever eaten. Can you give me ... recipe?
5. When ... door-bell rang, he just stood near for... moment before opening it.
6. Anyone can make ... mistake.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. Why are you (*in, on, by*) such a hurry?
2. It hurt the eyes to look (*on, at, in*) the sun.
3. I've bought this cake (*on, to, for*) your birthday.
4. I always finish work early (*in, on, at*) Fridays.
5. How many cinemas are there (*in, on, at*) this town?

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. We study almost (*every, some, no*) day.
2. I have two packs of cards. One is on the table, (*another, other, the other*) is in the drawer.
3. (*Nobody, Any, Someone*) can do it but you.
4. I think rock music is just (*a lot, many, much*) of noise.
5. There's hardly (*some, any, no*) tea left.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. broken/window/when/the/was?
2. when/bus/ waiting/the/we/accident/an/were/for/we/saw.
3. want/a/be/he/still/does/to/policeman?
4. to/a/quite/had/we/go/way/long.

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. I'm awfully sorry.
a) Don't mention it.
b) That's O.K.
c) It serves you right.
3. Could you pass me the paper?
a) Yes, I could.
b) Yes, I will.
c) Here you are.
2. How are you?
a) Don't worry.
b) And how are you?
c) I'm fine, thank you.
4. Will you open the drawer for me?
a) What do you want?
b) Do it yourself.
c) Sure, no problem.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

This summer is (*so, such*) hot. London is already (*full, filled*) of tourists and (*there, it*) is (*heavy, hard*) to find room to walk (*along, across*) the pavement in some areas, (*especialy, specially*) in Piccadilly. It's (*almost, rather*) impossible to work in this (*hot, heat*). Most of the time we (*drink, eat*) iced cokes in the office and (*fun, fan*) ourselves with pieces of (*typed, typing*) paper.

TEST 4

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. I (*bring*) you a gift. You (*like*) it?
2. Why you (*smell*) the meat? It can't be bad. I (*buy*) it this morning.
3. It was Jane's birthday last Sunday. Knowing her taste I (*make*) up my mind to buy her a large box of chocolates.
4. The weather (*get*) better and better. I (*feel*) spring in the air.

5. Her plane (*leave*) at 6.40 tomorrow. I (*promise*) to take her to the airport.
6. Everybody realized of course that I (*be*) a foreigner.
7. It turned out that the windows (*smash*) with a hammer taken from the tool-shed.

II. Use the right article.

1. I'm always forgetting ... people's names.
2. ... only thing that matters is to find ... way home.
3. Mary said, «What... nice idea!»
4. North Wales seems ... good place for ... holiday.
5. She is anxious to find ... better job.
6. There's nothing like ... cheese for me for ... breakfast.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. I arrived (*to, at, -*) home feeling very tired.
2. I didn't see you (*on, in, at*) the party on Sunday.
3. He studied French (*at, on, in*) Paris (*since, for*) a year.
4. I didn't feel very well when I woke (*down, up*).
5. You'll find the sport results (*in, by, on*) the back page of the newspaper.

Circle the suitable pronoun.

Yesterday we had supper with the neighbours of (*our, us, ours*).

She left the house without saying (*something, anything, nothing*) to (*somebody, nobody, anybody*). (*None, no, not*) of the people I met there were English. 4 We've got (*many, much, plenty*) of time. 5. Not (*every, all, many*) the stories about this film are true.

y Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

- 1 the/her/yet/has/cat/lady/found/old?
- 2 month/I/the/to/went/last/dentist/times/three/see.
- 3 lift/tomorrow/I'ya/to/give/the/you/station.
- 4 me/tooth/giving/again/this/is/trouble.

VI. Choose the right variant

1. My father was in hospital for six weeks.
 - a) For what?
 - b) How much?
 - c) For how long?
3. What is he doing there now?
 - a) It's none of your business
 - b) I really don't know.
 - c) I never know.
2. I'd like to help you.
 - a) You mustn't.
 - b) You would, wouldn't you?
 - c) You needn't, thank you.
4. My room is much larger than yours.
 - a) Is it?
 - b) Isn't it?
 - c) Is it not?

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

I decided to become a car mechanic. It seemed (*such, so*) exciting, like an (*adventure, advantage*). So I (*made, did*) a course in car mechanics. I (*enjoyed, joined*) learning about a car bit by bit until I (*realized, understood*) every part of it, and how every part (*fitted, suited*) in with the rest. I also enjoyed taking an engine (*at part, apart*) and then (*putting*) *placing* it together again! And when I succeeded (*there, it*) (*seemed, looked*) like a miracle to me!

TEST 5

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets

1. When Mrs. Allen (*peel*) potatoes she (*cut*) her finger
2. How long you (*drive*) a car? - Since I (*arrive*) here.
3. I'm sorry to say but they (*lose*) the game.
4. Luckily, when we (*get*) there the painting (*not sell*) yet
5. She (*use*) to play the piano beautifully although she (*not/ play*) so well now. She (*say*) she (*not practise*) as much as when she (*study*) at a music school.
6. You ever (*meet*) the man who (*live*) next door?

II. Use the right article.

1. ... plane didn't fly because of... storm.

2. Why are you wearing ... tie today, Mike?
3. ... tractor can pull... plough faster than ... donkey can.
4. Bill doesn't like ... record Jack has bought.
5. Jack drinks ... water with every meal.
6. Tom is ... successful young artist.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. There's a dirty mark (*on, at, in*) the wall.
2. I have to be (*at, on, it*) home (*on, in, by*) 5.
3. We got stuck in a traffic jam (*in, at, on*) the way to the airport.
4. I picked (*up, on, of*) this brochure when I was (*at, in, over*) Sydney last.
5. Tom is ill. He wasn't (*in, on, at*) work today.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. I've got (*no, not, neither*) money at all.
2. Some people like the sea, (*other, others, no*) prefer the mountains.
3. Only (*few, a few, the few*) people are perfectly bilingual.
4. I invited them both but (*none, no one, neither*) agreed to come.
5. I opened the door but I couldn't see (*nobody, somebody, anybody*).

y. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. Friday/you/me/by/a/can/birthday/make/cake?
2. an/eggs/one/without/can't/omelette/make/breaking.
3. me/a/birthday/wished/happy/no one.
4. only/me/the/is/who/she/understands/person.

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. Please remind me to post the letters.
 - a) Not at all.
 - b) Here you are.
 - c) I will.
3. Have you got a light?
 - a) Don't worry.
 - b) Don't bother.
 - c) Here you are.
2. How often do you have to travel on business?
 - a) Not many times.
 - b) Twice a month, normally.
 - c) For a long time.
4. She is still in hospital.
 - a) Isn't she?
 - b) Is she?
 - c) When?

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

Jane Fonda is an actress (*which, who*) is (*good, well*) known for her (*roles, rolls*) in films. Her first (*cinema, film*) was «Tall Story» in 1960 and for several years her (*image, character*) was as a Hollywood «Sex symbol». At the (*year, age*) of 32 she changed her beliefs and values and started to take (*place, part*) in (*politics, policy*). She (*told, spoke*) against the Vietnam war and became (*very, enough*) unpopular in Hollywood at that time.

TEST 6

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets

1. Don't disturb him. He (*work*).
2. It (*to be*) very quiet in the house.
3. Tony (*give*) another six months to finish his research
4. He (*be*) interested in physics since childhood.
5. What you (*do*) since you (*leave*) Oxford?
6. She (*use*) to bring me little presents when I (*be*) a child
7. Write to me when you (*get*) back. I (*look*) forward to your letter.

II. Use the right article.

1. We'll have to wait until... photos are ready.
2. ... police are looking into ... matter now.
3. I've told him ... lot of times that I don't know who's broken ... window but he doesn't believe me.
4. She looked at me with ... strange smile.
5. I'm afraid Mr. Brown is on ... holiday till... end of... month.
6. Charles, who was ... oldest, led ... boys to ... place where the boat was tied up under ... shelter of some bushes.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. It's always too hot (*at, in, on*) Ann's house.

2. I haven't seen Ken (*in, for, by*) some time.
3. He usually goes (*on, at, to*) work (*by, on, in*) car.
4. I'll be moving (*to, for, at*) a new address (*in, on, at*) the end of September.
5. Please, don't be late (*in, at, for*) the meeting.
6. Suddenly a fight broke (*up, out, in*) between two boys (*out, at, in*) the classroom.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. The suitcase is too heavy for (*me, myself, oneself*) to carry.
2. Do (*each, many, somebody*) of your friends speak English?
3. George is (*much, little, more*) richer than most people.
4. The boy refused to tell us (*something, nothing, anything*).
5. He left without (*a lot, no, any*) money.
- 5 The headmaster wished them (*everybody, all, many*) good luck.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

- 1 their/they/definite/enjoy/at/seaside/will/holidays/the.
2. you/so/may/is/carelessly/into/drive/you/an/get/accident.
3. write/thank/wonderful/I/must/present/at/to/you/once/ your/for.
4. Ann/I/to/a/can/for/minute/speak?

VI. Choose the best response.

1. Have you had dinner yet? 2. What's your brother like?
- a) Never mind. a) He's fine, thank you.
- b) Don't bother. b) His name is Paul.
- c) Not yet. c) He's very kind and gentle.
3. I don't like cornflakes 4. How often do you have with milk. English classes?
- a) And I don't. a) Several times.
- b) Me too. b) Once a week.
- c) Nor do I. c) Sometimes.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

Last weekend I got (*off, out*) all my last year's summer (*clothes, cloths*) and decided that they looked (*terribly, terrible*) old and out of (*fashion, time*). (*So, as*) on Saturday (*went, came*) shopping. (*More, Most*) people in London (*wear, dress*) very (*smart, smartly*) and (*it, there*) is important in my (*study, job*) to (*look, see*) good.

TEST 7

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in bracket

1. Kate often (*ring up*) her mother in London when she (*study*) at Manchester University.
2. What time he usually (*have dinner*)!
3. When I (*get*) home I (*make*) a cup of coffee and (*turn*) on the T.V.
4. It is half past ten now. John is outside and (*check*) his car. He says he (*be*) ready in an hour or so.
5. If we (*not/hurry*), all the tickets (*sell*) by the time we (*get*) there.
6. Hardly the train (*leave*) the station, when there (*be*) an explosion.

II. Choose the right article.

1. When I was 20, I went to ... United States. Travelling by ... plane was too expensive, so I decided to travel by ... coach.
2. I've just bought ... new car. And where's ... car you bought last year?
3. It was such ... wonderful performance that we applauded for fifteen minutes.
4. They are discussing ... matter at... moment.
5. We used to walk a lot when we didn't have ... car.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. How do you usually get (*for, to, at*) the University?
2. Why don't you write (*by, in, on*) ink?
3. He finally decided to give (*in, up, out*) smoking.
4. They had to put (*in, up, off*) the wedding because of his father's illness.
5. She's been learning Grammar (*for, since, by*) 3 months.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. He was in (*no, not, none*) need for help.
2. (*All, Every, Each*) work was done in one day.
3. I think this video film is (*less, least*) interesting than the one you brought last Saturday.
4. Would you like (*any, some, not*) more juice?
5. I was tired and so were (*the others, everyone, all*).

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

- 1 nor/was/the/comfortable/hotel/neither/clean. ? to/and/the/said/eat/doctor/fruit/more/vegetables.
3. your/I/borrow/could/camera?
4. she/Italian/long/has/how/been/learning? 5 raining/the/it/by/had/evening/stopped.

VI. Choose the best response.

1. He hasn't spoken to Ann.
 - a) And I haven't.
 - b) Me too.
 - c) Nor have I.
3. Shall I do it for you?
 - a) No, you will not.
 - b) No, you must not.
 - c) No, you needn't, thank you.
2. I'm not at all sorry.
 - a) Are you?
 - b) Don't you?
 - c) Aren't you?
4. What time are your class over?
 - a) It's late in the afternoon
 - b) At half past five.
 - c) It's later than usual.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

A lot of (*Japan, Japanese*) parents 'arrange' (*marriages, weddings*) for their children. This is because they (*feel, fill*) that marriage (*affects, effects*) not only the young (*pair, couple*) but the (*whole, all*) family. They believe that (*there, it*) is important that the young (*men, people*) have the (*same, alike*) interests and that they (*go, come*) from the same social (*background, platform*). A lot of (*arranging, arranged*) marriages are (*success, successful*) and (*help, aid*) the tradition of the Japanese family to continue.

TEST 8

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets

1. Where (*be*) the manager? - I just (*see*) him. He (*talk*) on the telephone.
2. You ever (*face*) with such problems?
3. They (*go*) to get married. The wedding (*be*) next Saturday.
4. I (*write*) this letter to you while the children (*play*) on the beach.
5. That isn't my watch. It (*belong*) to my cousin.
6. What you (*do*) at 6 o'clock last night?
7. He was sorry that he (*offend*) us. He said he (*not intend*) to be rude.

II. Use the right article.

1. Last year he worked for ... big company in ... Brussels. ... company employs over 4000 people.
2. ... capital of... USA is not... biggest city of... country.
3. What do you think of ... Harrisons? - I don't like ... husband much but... wife is ... very nice woman.
4. Where's ... magazine I bought yesterday?
5. We had ... lovely time in Spain. - So you enjoyed ... holiday, didn't you?

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. After we had travelled (*for, by, at*) miles, there was still no sign (*in, of, about*) the town which was marked (*in, on, at*) the map.
2. Don't be late (*at, for, on*) dinner.
3. It's such a small room that I can hardly move (*in, on, at*) it.
4. They washed their clothes (*by, at, in*) hand.
5. The other person who sits (*on, at, by*) our table is Mrs. Hunt. I haven't found (*up, out, off*) anything (*for, in, about*) her.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. I don't have (*something, anything, nothing*) to do this afternoon.
2. Some of (*them, they, their*) must work to earn money.
3. The Aliens don't have (*many, much, plenty*) money.
4. Jane goes to the library (*some, every, all*) week.
5. One boy played the guitar while two (*other, others, another*) sang.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. Boston/was/in/Jack/lived/since/born/has/he.
2. rang/I/the/a/phone/was/shower/when/having.
3. do/people/stupid/why/things/do?
4. leaving/they/Rome/tomorrow/are/for.

VI. Choose the best response.

1. Are you free tonight?
 - a) I'm all right.
 - b) Why do you ask?
 - c) Never mind.
3. Sorry to keep you waiting.

- a) No at all.
- b) You are welcome.
- c) That's all right.
- 2. Did you like the film?
- a) I always did.
- b) I never did.
- c) It was so boring.
- 4. I have a bad headache.
- a) Take a pill, then.
- b) Don't worry.
- c) Do your best.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

Work plays a very important role in (*Japan, Japanese*). Because work is (*so, such*) important, a child - (*especially, specially*) a boy, - must work very (*heavy, hard*) indeed. He begins to (*study, teach*) (*serious, seriously*) as (*soon, long*) as he starts (*going, coming*) to school, because if he doesn't (*take, pass*) all his exams, he won't go to a good university and won't be (*able, capable*) to get a good (*work, job*) (*too, either*).

TEST 9

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets

- 1. If you (*not/stay*) in bed for a couple of days at least, you never (*feel*) better.
- 2. Kate (*stand*) in front of the mirror when somebody (*knock*) at the door.
- 3. By the time she (*be*) 50, she (*live*) in this country for most of her life.
- 4. He (*be*) very interested in politics lately.
- 5. His horse (*be*) lame so he (*have*) to finish the journey on foot.
- 6. You (*cut*) your finger. Look, it (*bleed*). Put a plaster on it.
- 7. When he (*finish*) packing the furniture the whole room (*be*) in a mess.

II. Choose the right article.

- 1. Betty was... typist in ... office. Sally was ... saleswoman in ...store where they were having tea.
- 2. Everybody says it was ... excellent trip.
- 3. You must contact... manager and tell him about... letter.
- 4. This plant is ... biggest in the corporation.
- 5. Someone stole ...lot of... money from this bank... last year.
- 6. ... air is so close today.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

- 1. George finished his studies (*in, at, on*) midnight.
- 2. How dare you? Take your hands (*of, off, out of*) me at once!
- 3. When I got (*for, into, to*) the car this morning I found that the radio had been stolen.
- 4. Please, could you explain this rule (*-, for, to*) me?
- 5. Are you good (*in, on, at*) tennis?

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

- 1. His theory is very complicated: very (*a few, few, little*) people understand it.
- 2. There aren't (*much, many, a lot*) chairs in the room.
- 3. How many of the university teachers do you know personally?- (*Neither, None, No*).
- 4. I'm writing to a friend of (*my, mine, me*).

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

- 1. anywhere/you/Tom/have/seen?
- 2. car/very/to/use/nice/me/it's/of/you/let/your.
- 3. this/we/are/to/problem/trying/solve.
- 4. George/work/late/is/for/his/ever?

VI. Choose the best response.

- 1. Can I borrow your dictionary?
- a) I'm afraid so.
- b) I'm afraid not.
- c) I'm very much afraid.
- 2. Where shall we meet?
- a) We may or we may not.
- b) You will see me.
- c) Any place you like.
- 3. Are you doing anything this evening?
- a) It's nothing at all.
- b) It's great fun.
- c) I'm not sure yet.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

A Typical Day in Australia

In summer the sun comes (*up, down*) quite early and it is already warm by 7.00 a.m. Most (*peoples, people*) live (*near, nearly*) a beach or a big swimming (*pool, pull*), so very often all the family (*go, come*) for an early morning swim. The young mothers (*which, who*) don't (*work, walk*) spend a lot of the day at the (*beach, bench*). (*It, there*) is a healthy (*way, road*) for young (*children, parents*) to (*grow, rise*) up and nearly (*every, each*) child can swim (*good, well*). *It (makes, does)* them a lot of good.

TEST 10

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. She (*lie*) in bed all morning yesterday. She (*say*), she (*have*) a splitting headache.
2. The waiter (*take*) my plate away before I (*finish*) eating.
3. My father is at home most time now, as he (*write*) a novel.
4. I (*be*) so tired last night that I (*fall*) asleep as soon as I (*touch*) the pillow.
5. I hear Tom (*find*) a new job at last. He (*search*) for a job for quite a time.
6. There (*be*) many significant changes in Britain in the pastwar period.

II. Use the right article.

1. They were able to finish ... race, weren't they?
2. Newspapers are normally delivered twice ... day.
3. ... burglars did little damage to... house apart from breaking ... windows.
4. I'm glad you like ... steak. I'll give you ... recipe. 5. I just want... cup of... tea. Is that possible?
6. Do you know ... name of... restaurant's owner?

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. According (*for, to, by*) the Bible, Jesus Christ was born (*on, at, in*) a stable.
2. There's no sign (*at, in, of*) snow coming this Christmas.
3. The tree was hung (*by, in, with*) presents for all the family.
4. Look (*out, at, on*)! That tree is going to fall (*at, on, to*) you.
5. We drove swiftly (*on, across, along*) the narrow winding road that led (*in, to, at*) the hills.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. She never does very (*much, many, a lot*). Sometimes she watches TV or looks through (*some, few, any*) magazines.
2. I'm sorry, I can't tell you (*nothing, something, anything*).
3. There is (*not, no, none*) more bread.
4. There has been (*many, a lot, much*) of rain recently. 5. I last saw Jack (*few, little, a few*) days ago.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. little/train/station/the/stopped/every/at.
2. Tom/this/I/find/photograph/can't/in.
3. he/how/now/feeling/is?
4. Jack/nobody/gone/knows/has/where.

VI. Choose the best response.

1. Why not go to a disco?
a) That's why.
b) That's a good idea.
c) That's the trouble.
2. I want to ask you something.
a) Do it again.
b) Don't bother.
c) Go ahead.
3. Who's that man over there?
a) He's an architect.
b) He's very clever.
c) He's my brother-in-law.
4. Come and have lunch with us.
a) With pleasure.
b) I like it. c) Not at all.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

I'm Anna Gonzales from Brazil. (*It, There*) is eight years (*since, from*) I started to learn English. My (*bigger, biggest*) Problem is pronunciation. (*I'd love, I love*) listening to English pop music (*which, what*) is a (*great, large*) (*way, road*) of learning new (*vocabulary, dictionary*). My dad's a businessman and he (*uses, used to*) English all the (*time, period*) He (*.speaks, talks*) it (*fluent, fluently*). He wants me (*to speak speak*) it (*good, well*) enough so that I can (*enjoy, join*) his (*company, campaign*).

TEST 11

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. We (*not/make*) a decision where to spend the holidays yet.
2. My train (*leave*) London at 4.30, so I'm in a hurry.
3. Shakespeare (*be*) born in 1564 and (*die*) in 1616. He (*live*) in Stratford for most of his life but he (*live*) in London when Queen Elizabeth (*die*) in 1603.
4. When they (*argue*), I was afraid that the argument (*end*) in a fight.
5. Is that 703485? - No, I'm afraid you (*dial*) the wrong number.
6. She (*come*) in and (*say*) that the kettle (*boil*).
7. After I (*post*) the letter I (*remember*) that I (*forget*) to put on a stamp.

II. Use the right article.

1. All... first three runners received ... prize.
2. Tom looks as if he has enjoyed .. party. 3.1 prefer ... tea to ... coffee.
4. That's ... house where I was born.
5. We came in quietly so as not to wake ... baby.
6. How wonderful... weather is! I'm going to ... beach. 7.1 play ... football nearly every day.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. Why can't you cut the cake (*onto, into, by*) ten pieces?
2. First we'll send you a letter and invite you (*on, to, in*) an interview.
3. A car drew (*down, up, on*) (*in, at, on*) the Swan Hotel and a young man got (*from, out, through*).
4. When did you arrive (*to, in, at*) the airport?
5. Very few people live (*to, in, -*) the age of one hundred nowadays.
6. Why are you so angry (*to, on, with*) us?

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. (*No, Not, None*) two people look alike.
2. (*My, Mine, Me*) room is as hard to clean as (*your, yours, you*).
3. Sorry, but I haven't got (*some, none, any*) razor-blades.
4. I don't think I can wear this shirt for (*other, another, others*) day. It's dirty.
5. Would you like (*a few, a little, little*) champagne?

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. looks/in/Stella/after/hospital/patients/a.
2. you/to/do/going/enjoy/concerts?
3. serious/at/her/was/more/than/illness/much/we/first/ thought/had.
4. for/Monday/Scotland/I'm/to/a/next/going/holiday/short.

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. When are they going to buy this house? - Don't you know? They finally decided
 - a) not to be.
 - b) not.
 - c) not to.
2. I can't play the violin.
 - a) I can't too.
 - b) I can't neither.
 - c) I can't either.

VII. Choose the suitable response.

1. Shall I give anyone a lift?
 - a) Oh, it's very kind of you.
 - b) Give it to me.
 - c) Don't.
2. Where are you from?
 - a) From the library.
 - b) It doesn't matter.
 - c) From Canada.

VIII. Choose the appropriate word.

I'm in my early (*fifties, fiftieth*). I'm very (*tall, high*), and (*quite, quiet*) heavily built. I have straight (*hair, hare*) j. but I'm. going (*bald, bold*), so (*it, there*) isn't a lot of it left. I have a grey (*beard, brow*) and moustache. My eyes are blue, and I (*wear, dress*) glasses. I don't think I'm very (*well, good*), looking, (*and, but*) I'm (*not, no*) bad-looking (*also, either*) I (*probable, probably*) (*look, see*) younger than I (*do, am*).

TEST 12

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. Many of the exhibits (*damage*) in the fire, and some totally (*destroy*).
2. What you (*read*) when I (*see*) you in the library yesterday morning?
3. How long you (*be*) married? - For twenty-five years. I (*be*) a student then.
4. If Sally (*stay*) here till the end of the week, I (*take*) her to the theatre. - That's OK. She (*leave*) next Monday, by the evening train.

5. That evening I (*have*) dinner with an uncle of mine. At the opposite table I (*see*) a woman whose face (*seem*) familiar to me. Yet, I (*not/can*) remember where I (*see*) her.
6. I know you (*hide*) something unpleasant from me, but I (*want*) you to be honest with me.
7. I (*tell*) the other day that Jim (*break*) his leg.

II. Use the right article.

1. Have you got... few minutes? I'd like to have ... chat with you.
2. They usually have ... dinner at... home.
3. It was ... luxurious hotel,... best I've ever stayed in.
- 4 There was such ...long queue that we decided not to wait.
- 5.... students will be writing ... test in ... Room 405.
6. ... head of... department made ... brief report.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. Who's the old lady all dressed (*on, in, to*) green?
2. Are you still interested (*on, at, in*) chemistry?
3. Can you help me to look (*at, through, for*) my glasses?
4. We've known each other (*in, for, since*) a long time. 5.1 look forward (*on, to, by*) your next visit, dear.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. There's much (*fewer, less, least*) water in the river than usual.
2. Though his theory is fairly complicated, there are (*few, a few, the few*) people who understand it.
3. Come on! We don't have (*many, plenty, much*) time.
4. Learner-drivers are not allowed to drive on (*them, their, theirs*) own.
5. I'm not going (*somewhere, nowhere, anywhere*) tonight.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. in/expect/London/time/do/to/what/you/arrive?
2. doctors/teachers/more/than/paid/are?
3. university/brother/languages/my/studies/at.
4. tallest/all/is/giraffe/the/the/of/animals.

VI. Choose the right response.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Have a good day. | 2. Thank you for the lift. |
| a) I'll have. | a) Me too. |
| b) No, I shan't. | b) You are welcome. |
| c) Thanks and the same | c) The same to you. to you. |
| 3. Did you enjoy the film? | 4. What was the weather like |
| a) Yes, it was great. | a) I liked. |
| b) Yes, I enjoyed. | b) Like what? |
| c) Yes. I enjoy it much. | c) It was windy. |

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

I must (*write, to write*) at once to thank you for your (*lovely*) lively) present. I like it (*so, such*) much! I can't (*tell, say*) you what I (*fell, felt*) when I opened the parcel and (*found found out*) a (*pair, couple*) of beautiful socks. I am (*particularly, particular*) touched because I can (*see, look*) at a (*glance, sight*) that they're (*home, house*)-knitted. You can't (*buy, sell*) socks (*as, like*) that in the shops!

TEST 13

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. The bowl (*break*) if you (*drop*) it.
2. I hear there (*be*) a barbecue at the college last Saturday. You (*have*) a good time?
3. Nick (*pass*) his driving test yet? - Yes, he (*pass*) it in October.
4. Look! The paper (*peel*) in the sitting-room and the hall; in fact the whole flat (*need*) redecorating.
5. You (*try*) using this new cordless telephone?
6. Which man is your husband? - The man in a grey hat. He (*wave*) his handkerchief at me.
- 7.1 (*feel*) sorry that Bob (*not/keep*) his word.
8. A lot of meetings already (*hold*) by the local council, but nothing (*decide*) yet.

II. Use the right article.

1. Listen to her beautiful voice. She sings like ... angel.
2. Did your advertisement get any result? - I'll say! We advertized for ... night watchman and ... next night we were robbed.
- 3 ... rain is getting heavier and heavier.
- 4 They say ... hard-working person works like ... beaver.
- 5 ... milk in that jug is very cold. You shouldn't drink such ... cold milk.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. Can you look (*for, up, at*) a word in the dictionary (*for, to, by*) me, please?
2. Are you listening (*at, to, in*) me? Why are you looking (*out of, up, to*) the window all the time?
- 3.1 hate travelling (*in, on, by*) underground. It's too crowded.

- 4.1 can't help knocking things (*down, of, up*). I'm such a clumsy person.
 5.1 thought I had left my umbrella (*in, on, at*) home but in fact I had been carrying it all day (*in, at, on*) my bag.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. The (*fewer, less, least*) cars there are the (*least, fewer, less*) pollution there will be.
2. I don't hear (*nothing, something, anything*).
3. Sorry, but there is (*not, no, neither*) time to talk.
4. She is a very quiet person. She doesn't generally say (*many, a lot of, much*).
5. This coat is (*more, much, most*) cheaper than mine.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. anything/she/today/hasn't/eaten.
2. the/was/salary/I/to/low/decided/job/the/accept/although.
3. a/we/yesterday/had/very/day/tiring.
4. car/happy/you/with/are/your/new?

VI. Choose the right response.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Most children like animated cartoons. | 2. Have you been to Piccadilly Circus and Trafalgar Square") |
| a) So will I. | a) Not yet. |
| b) So do I. | b) Not much. |
| c) So shall I. | c) Not now. |
| 3. I'm going out for a walk. | 4. What do you think of jogging? |
| a) Take the dog with | a) Nothing, you, will you? |
| b) It's very kind of you | b) It's fun. to do so. |
| c) Have a nice trip. | c) It's funny. |

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

I went to (*study, teach*) medicine in London as a pupil to a famous (*surgeon, sergeant*) and (*while, during*) I was in London I started to study navigation (*because, that's why*) I had always wanted to travel. (*Soon, Sooner*) I was (*offered, suggested*) a (*job, work*) as a (*ship's, sheep's*) doctor and I (*accepted, rejected*) it. At (*first, the first*) the (*journey, hiking*) was (*pleasant, pleasantly*), (*but, and*) in the Pacific we ran into a storm, the ship (*sank, drowned*) and (*every, everybody*) on board (*except, besides*) me was drowned. I managed to swim to an (*isle, island*), but I was (*so, such*) tired when I reached (*land, soil*) that I fell (*fast, fastly*) asleep on the sand.

TEST 14

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. It (*rain*) hard this morning when I (*wake up*). It (*seem*) the rain (*fall*) the whole night.
2. I never (*be*) to India, but I (*go*) to Pakistan last summer.
3. When I (*be*) a child, my parents never (*let*) me watch TV after 8 p.m.
4. She (*be*) sixteen now but I thought she (*be*) older.
5. They (*try*) to find a solution to this problem ever since I (*get*) to know them.
6. When the lake (*freeze*) it'll be safe for ice-skating.
7. Yesterday I (*tell*) that you (*have*) a vacancy for a computer operator in a couple of months.

II. Use the right article.

1. She sometimes gets ... letters from her friends abroad.
2. government ought to do something about housing.
3. ... knife shouldn't be used as ... screwdriver.
4. ... plane crashed while it was being tested.
5. Some people believe in ... life after ... death.
6. ... music which excites me is 1930s jazz.
7. While they were sailing up ... west coast, they ran out of... food.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. A strange thing happened (*to, with, at*) me the other day.
2. I didn't have enough money to pay (*-, for, on*) the meal.
3. I'm waiting (*-, to, for*) the rain to stop. I must go (*at, to, on*) the post-office.
4. I was upset that I had done so badly (*in, with, at*) the exam.
5. The driver of the car was injured (*at, in, on*) the accident.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. You don't need to go shopping - we've got enough food for supper - (*few, little, a few*) eggs and (*a few, a little, little*) bread and cheese.
2. Don't say (*nothing, something, anything*).
3. (*Each, Every, All*) chair and table looks freshly painted.
4. (*Some, Both, Many*) magazines and that book were left in the study hall.
5. Don't blame (*myself, me, oneself*). Blame (*you, yourself, ourselves*).

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. nervous/examinations/feel/you/before/do?
2. of/boring/I/ever/he/one/most/the/is/people/met/have.
3. unpleasant/near/living/sometimes/be/very/life/must/ people/airports/for.
4. Friday/wedding/place/the/took/last.

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. Where's the money? 2. Mary dislikes mushrooms.
- a) I've spent them. a) So do we.
- b) Here they are. b) Neither do we.
- c) It's in the purse. c) Neither we do.

VII. Choose the best response.

1. We are going to a disco. 2. Is Jack still in hospital?
- a) It's up to you. a) I don't care.
- b) It doesn't matter. b) Never mind.
- c) Have a nice time. c) I'm afraid so.

VIII. Choose the appropriate word.

I am (*interested, interesting*) in sport, (*especially, specially*) athletics, and I (*run, race*) seven or eight kilometres (*every, some*) day. I particularly (*entertain, enjoy*) cross-country running where you have to run along fields, jump (*over, above*) streams and so on. (*While, During*) I'm running I think about (*all, every*) sorts of things and at the (*end, finish*) of a run I'm (*surprising, surprised*) to (*find, learn*) that I've managed to (*solve, save*) a problem (*that, what*) was on my (*mind, brain*).

TEST 15

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. The children (*stop*) chattering as Miss Hughes (*enter*) the classroom. Then they (*stand up*).
2. When I (*start*) practising as a physician I (*live*) in a small community on the east coast of Lake Huron.
3. I (*give*) you a lift to the station tomorrow if you (*like*).
4. Tropical fruits often (*fly*) to northern cities by jet.
5. At the party he (*make*) a speech. He (*thank*) all those who (*support*) him at that difficult moment of his life.
6. He (*be*) out of job for half a year already.
7. We had to go on holiday because our house (*redecorate*).

II. Use the right article.

1. I have ... terrible cold and I am staying in ... bed today.
2. Paul spent half of his life in ... Far East.
3. ...Smiths had ... son and ... daughter. ... son was in ... Army and ... daughter was training to be ... teacher.
4. She was ... first woman to cross ... Atlantic in ... canoe.
5. I don't like ... milk in my coffee, and I take only ... little sugar.
6. ... person riding ... bicycle on ... sidewalk is ... hazard for... pedestrians.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

1. Brian is well able to care (*at, of, for*) his younger brother.
2. Don't put (*of, off, away*) till tomorrow what you can do today.
3. Will you turn (*on, down, up*) the music? Little Kitty is sleeping.
4. You must apologize (*on, for, of*) disturbing them.
5. He doesn't want to take part (*at, on, in*) any more conferences.
6. You must sew (*in, on, up*) those loose buttons.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. There are too (*much, many, plenty*) mice in the barn.
2. She became (*that, so, such*) scared that she began to cry.
3. There isn't (*many, a lot, much*) room for so (*many, plenty few*) people.
4. There was (*not, none, no*) chance of escape.
5. I hate opera and they don't like it (*too, neither, either*)
6. (*Either, Both, Neither*) Joe or Lola writes the sports column (*each, every, any*) week.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. you/I'd/to/with/like/have/word/a.
2. was/I/lot/when/younger/used/to/cycling/a/go/I.
3. at/he/to/doesn't/home/seem/be.
4. there/thing/green/what's/that/over?

VI. Choose the right variant.

1. Do you want tea or 2. You don't have a light,
coffee? do you?
- a) I don't want. a) Yes, I don't.
- b) Either will do. b) No, I don't.
- c) I don't want tea nor c) Yes, I haven't, coffee.

VII. Choose the best response.

1. What's the matter? 2. I've got to go.
- a) I've cut my finger. a) Have you really?
- b) It's OK. b) That's nice.
- c) It doesn't matter. c) You are welcome.

VIII. Choose the appropriate word.

Oxford. (*Pale, Pail*) grey and (*gold, golden*) buildings, green lawns and trees bursting with blossom. (*This, There*) is the most beautiful (*place, space*) I have ever been to. (*It's, Its*) both peaceful and (*exciting, excited*). I'm standing at St. Anne's College with Linda (*which, who*) is a student (*here, there*). Linda and I haven't seen each other (*since, as*) we both left (*school, college*).

TEST 16

I Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 He said he (*not/think*) he (*see*) us somewhere before.
- 2 He (*give*) a gold watch as a reward for his successful work.
3. There's no need to rush. We (*not/leave*) before six.
4. Everyone who (*visit*) the town (*fall*) in love with it.
5. It usually (*hurt*) when I (*bend*) down.
6. He (*be*) furious when she said he never (*make*) a good teacher.
7. Be careful! If you (*tease*) the cat, it (*scratch*) you!

II. Use the right article.

1. You can keep ... book because I won't take it back to ... library until... end of... month.
2. Has anyone left... message for me in ...morning?
3. ... people from ... warm countries generally have ... hard time getting used to the winter in ... Belarus.
4. ... poorest people in ... country live in this area.
5. ... lake Baikal is ... deepest lake in ... world.
6. ... last two pages of ... diary were missing.

III. Circle the suitable preposition.

1. Who's the man (*at, in, on*) a funny coat over there?
2. Stop talking to me (*with, by, in*) that stupid voice.
3. Would you like to go (*on, for, at*) a swim or is it too cold (*to, with, for*) you?
4. Please fill out the form (*by, with, in*) ink. 5.1 like walking (*under, in, by*) the rain.
6. He hasn't written to me (*for, since, from*) September.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. You can have (*anything, everywhere, every*) you like.
2. (*Every, Each, No*) athlete and coach attends the athletic banquet at the end of the school year.
3. She married a friend of (*me, my, mine*) brother's.
4. You can come (*some, any, every*) day you like.
5. I have (*not, none, no*) wish to change my plans.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. is/anything/you/matter/the/with?
2. to/sleeping-bags/I/we/wonder/take/if/need.
3. they/a/don't/says/believe/word/he.
4. India/only/I've/to/been/once.

VI. Choose the right variant.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Did you enjoy the performance? | 2. Do you have to go to the University tomorrow? |
| a) Yes, I enjoyed. | a) No, I don't. |
| b) Yes, it was great. | b) No, I haven't. |
| c) Yes, I was enjoying, | c) No, I can't. |
| 3 How about making a picnic? | 4. Who's Benett Smith? |
| a) I'll tell you how. | a) He's a taxi-driver. |
| b) I'm all for it. | b) He's very smart. |
| c) Don't bother. | c) He is Jane's new boy-friend. |

VIII. Choose the appropriate word.

This morning we (*stood up, got up*) and left the college before 6 a.m. to (*join, invite*) in the celebrations. I (*lent, borrowed*) a bicycle and we cycled to Magdalen College. I think it's the most beautiful college (*of, from*) all. Even though (*it, there*) was (*so, such*) early, there were lots of (*people, peoples*) out in the streets. The girls were (*dressed, wearing*) hats covered with flowers. Everyone stood under the tower of Magdalen Chapel and when the (*watch, clock*) struck six from the (*top, bottom*) of the tower, the choir boys started to sing. They sang English folk songs.

TEST 17

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. He (*apologise*) saying he (*not/mean*) to hurt us.
2. My sister is very upset: she (*not/invite*) to the party.

3. When I (*get*) into the car this morning I (*find*) that the radio (*steal*).
4. Will you look after the kids while I (*go*) shopping?
5. This is my new car. It (*run*) very well.
6. I hope you (*not/throw*) away the present Uncle Stanley (*give*) you for your birthday.
7. This kind of fish usually (*serve*) with white sauce.

II. Use the right article.

1. ... police have no idea where ... jewels are.
2. ... moment... train stopped at... platform, I called ... porter who carried my luggage to ... station and found me ... taxi.
3. Slamming ... door, Carol drove off in ... car her father had given her as ... present.
4. There is going to be... foggy and... cold weather next week.
5. This is ... last time I do you ... favour.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. I'm doing my best to take care (*of, off, for*) my health.
2. (*At, To, By*) the time I got to the cafe, it had been shut.
3. The boy was punished (*at, on, for*) smoking.
4. When did his interest (*at, in, on*) social work begin?
5. Can you explain (*for, to, -*) me why you didn't turn up last night?
6. It is strange experience coming (*back, up down*) to the place where you were born and brought (*out, back, up*).

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. If it rained (*little, less, least*) in this country (*much, plenty, more*) tourists would come here on holiday.
2. I've never seen so (*a few, plenty, many*) birds.
3. I don't know what's wrong with (*me, myself*) today I keep breaking things.
4. We haven't got (*no, none, any*) coffee at home.
5. I've never in my life met a man with (*so, such, not*) a loud laugh.

V. Put the words in the right order.

1. dance/all/the/for/done/the/decorating/juniors/have/the
2. ago/L/out/cat/let/the/hour/an.
3. badly/yesterday/you/played/don't/that/agree/learn/the?
4. torn/I/don't/had/know/jeans/my/where/I.

VI. Choose the right response.

1. Which would you like? 2. Where are the other photos?
- a) Everything. a) Don't bother.
- b) Only one. b) Never mind.
- c) Either. c) Just over there.
3. Would you like some 4. Could you pass me
- more ice-cream? the mustard?
- a) No more, thank you. a) I'd love to.
- b) None, thank you. b) I could.
- c) Not at all, thank you. c) Here you are.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

Dear Mr. Prior,

Thank you for (*coming, going*) for an interview (*last, latest*) Thursday. We have (*considered, discussed*) your application (*careful, carefully*), but regretfully we are (*unable, disable*) to offer you the (*post, seat*). (*While, Till*) your secretarial skills are well up to the standard required I did not (*fill, feel*) that your (*command, skill*) of French was (*good, well*) for our (*purposes, goals*). May I (*offer, suggest*) that you might (*do, make*) better to look for a (*job, work*) involving routine office work (*which, what*) won't need French (*as, like*) a working

With kind regards, (*your, yours*) sincerely Alan Lomax

TEST 18

Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Did I tell you about how Jane (*get on*) at college? .2 When the furniture (*deliver*)! We (*wait*) for two weeks already.
- 3 The stone (*sink*) the minute it (*hit*) the water.
- 4 Bruce tells me he (*not/have*) a holiday this year yet. 5 Those pyramids (*built*) around 400 A.D.
- 6_ I (*learn*) yesterday that his car (*break*) down. 7_ I (*be*) married to you for sixteen years and I still (*not/ know*) what (*go on*) inside your head.

II. Use the right article.

- 1.... dietician is ... doctor who helps ... people to choose ... right food.
2. First I wrote my name at... top of... page.
3. I'm afraid Mr.Brown is on ... holiday till ... end of ...month.
4. ... goods were in ... good condition and arrived on ...time.
5. Don't worry, it's all right now.... situation is completely

changed. 6.1 wouldn't mind having ... soup for ... first course.

III. Choose the suitable preposition.

- 1.1 was nearly frightened (*by, with, to*) death.
2. She is not very good (*on, in, at*) cooking.
3. Would you care (*of, for, to*) a cup of tea?
4. Stop looking (*to, on, at*) me like that - it's getting (*at, on, in*) my nerves.
5. You are very sorry (*of, with, for*) her, aren't you?

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. There's (*someone, anyone, no one*) on the phone who wants to speak to (*your, you, yours*) mother.
2. At weekends I do all my housework on one day so (*another, other, the other*) day I'm free to relax.
3. You've got (*many, much, plenty*) of food, so don't complain.
4. You can't sail when there is (*not, no, none*) wind.
5. If that doesn't work, you'll have (*other, the other another*) way of solving the problem.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. with/travelling/you/who/know/are/do/they?
2. isn't/more/my/living/any/married/us/sister/near.
3. sweet/the/tasted/lemonade.
4. her/Sally/class/is/than/taller/any/girl/other/in.

VI. Choose the right response.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. There's hardly any milk left. | 2.1 wouldn't like to get up so early. |
| a) That's fine. | a) And I wouldn't. |
| b) I don't want any. | b) Me too. |
| c) It's fun. | c) Neither would I. |
3. Sorry to keep you waiting. 4. Shall I wash the dishes?
- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| a) Don't say so. | a) You mustn't. |
| b) Don't mention it. | b) You won't. |
| c) That's O.K. | c) No, you needn't. |

thank you. VII. Choose the appropriate word.

My brother Hank has a strange eating (*custom, habit*) at breakfast. Each morning he (*expects, waits*) until the (*last, latest*) moment to (*get, stand*) up. Then he (*must, has*) to rush to (*catch, grasp*) the bus, so he eats breakfast as he moves (*along, around*) (*lifting, picking up*) his books and coat. Mother (*keeps, holds*) trying to get him to (*seat, sit*) down, (*but, and*) Dad (*says, tells*) at least he is eating. And a glass of milk with a (*peace, piece*) of toast is better than (*no, none*) breakfast at all.

TEST 19

I Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. T (*ask*) her what (*happen*) but she just (*look*) at me with a strange smile.
2. It's a bit trivial to talk about the beauty of autumn, but this year it (*be*) the prettiest I remember. According to the experts, it (*be*) the warm and moist summer that (*cause*) the intensity of the colours.
3. Laura (*sing*) professionally since 1978 when she (*record*) her first song.
4. Wye College (*situate*) in the village of Wye in the beautiful area of Kent.
5. Trinity College closely (*associate*) with the University of London since 1876.

II. Use the right article.

1. We never eat... white bread at... dinner.
2. Four people were taken to ... hospital after ... fire at their home early this morning. They left ... hospital after some treatment for ... minor burns.
3. - Who's that girl over there? Her face is familiar to me. - I think she's one of... girls who came for ... job interview ... other day.
4. How do you like ... weather today, Mr. Hope?
5. My granddad was wounded during ... war.
6. I like Jane. She has... lot of... warmth. She is ... kind of... person you can trust.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. You mustn't travel (*by, on, at*) a bus without a ticket.
2. We'll be getting (*of, off, out of*) the train (*in, through, at*) ten minutes.
3. It takes some years to develop a real skill (*in, with, on*) skating.
4. I think the play is a bit weak (*on, about, at*) the end
5. I wouldn't like to go (*to, for, in*) a foreign country without knowing a little of the language.
6. The lifeboat was raised (*out, from, out of*) the water and the rescued man was helped (*out, in, up*) on to deck.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. He's made (*so, such, this*) much money that he doesn't need to work (*any, no, some*) more.
2. I got home at 6. To my surprise (*neither, either, both*) of my parents was there.
3. I find (*this, such, so*) sort of attitude offensive. 4. (*Every, Each, Some*) time you use my dictionary you forget to

put it back on the shelf.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. heard/who/party/you/be/the/have/will/at?
2. more/than/do/Dick/the/practises/I/guitar/often.
3. until/played/the/noisily/children/dark.
4. slow/chess/very/is/game/a.

VI. Choose the right response.

1. Do you sometimes work on Saturday?
a) Why?
b) No, I don't.
c) What for?
2. Where is Adriano Morri from?
a) He's from next door.
b) He is a tourist.
c) He's from Italy.
3. Do you like dancing?
a) I used to, when I was younger.
b) I prefer dancing.
c) I have learned to dance,
4. May I use your telephone?
a) I am very sorry, indeed.
b) It's a pity.
c) I am afraid not.

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

that morning the office looked (*quite, quiet*) different. I fact it (*hard, hardly*) ever looked (*like, as*) that at all. All he (*employers, employees*) were standing (*up, about, out*), chatting and smoking. At the far (*end, edge*) of the room a man must have just (*told, said*) a very (*fun, funny*) story, and (*there, it*) was (*a loud, aloud*) burst of laughter just (*when, while*) Mary came in.

TEST 20

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. Shortly after the war my brother and I (*invite*) to spend a few days with an uncle.
2. When he (*lock*) the car door he (*remember*) he (*leave*) the keys inside.
3. Everything (*come*) to him who (*wait*).
4. Slow down. You (*go*) too fast. There (*be*) a speed limit of 30 kilometers.
5. I (*be*) afraid we (*not/can*) to come over, to see you next Sunday, as you (*suggest*). Tom's mother (*come*) to spend the day with us. - What about the Sunday after that -the twenty-second? -We (*be*) free that day and we (*love*) to come. We (*look forward*) to seeing your new house.
6. You (*freeze*) if you (*not/put*) a coat on. The weather (*change*) since the morning.
7. Oh, I (*know*) exactly what you (*mean*). Things like that (*drive*) me crazy too.

II. Choose the right article.

1. It is ... wonderful part of... England and ... scenery resembles ... Switzerland. As ... matter of... fact, we had such ... good time that we have decided to have ... holiday there again ... next year.
- 2 Her husband is on ... business trip so she has to look after ... children all by herself
3. Before I had ... car of my own I used to spend ... lot of ... time waiting for ... buses.

III. Choose the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. I always have tea and some toast with jam (*at, on, for*) breakfast.
2. The smell of herbs reminds me (*-, of, on*) my childhood.
3. He must be here (*for, by, to*) nine o'clock. As soon as he turns (*out, up, in*) tell him to come (*on, in, up*) and wait (*for, -, during*) a few minutes in the office.
4. I'd like to go climbing (*on, at, -*) next weekend. You know I'm fond (*about, over, of*) it.
5. It'll all come right (*on, in, at*) the end. I'm sure (*in, over, of*) it-
6. Early (*in, on, at*) the morning the train approached (*-, to, at*) the seaside town where I was going to spend my holidays.

IV. Choose the suitable pronoun.

1. Even an old car is better than (*no, none, neither*).
2. Look out! (*Any, Some, A few*) of the oil has spilled out onto the floor.
3. (*Every, All, Everyone*) in the tour buses is eager to get started.
4. (*Somebody, Anybody, Everybody*) has forgotten to turn off the car lights.

V. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. up/would/help/you/to/washing/like/me/the/with?
2. been/today/kids/really/the/have/noisy.
3. and/first/to/of/flour/butter/all/you/the/have/mix/the.
4. to/I/get/told/where/them/off.

VI. Choose the right response.

1. Good luck at your exams.
a) Yes, I will.
b) And at your.
c) Thanks a lot.

3. Have a good picnic!
a) I really will have.
b) Don't worry.
c) Thanks a lot.

| | |
|--|--|
| 2. Tea or coffee? a) Give tea. b) Rather tea. c) Tea, please. | 4. Isn't she clever? a) I'm afraid so. b) She doesn't. c) Rather! |
|--|--|

VII. Choose the appropriate word.

(*Rising, Raising*) a puppy is not (*easy, light*). My brother and I have (*found, founded*) that first we have to (*defend, protect*) anything chewable, (*like, as*) a shoe (*lying, laying*) on the floor. (*Rising, Raising*) costs of veterinary (*fees, fines*) and dog food (*make, do*) it expensive to (*keep, hold*) a puppy. But the effort will seem (*justifying, justified*) when we all (*sit, seat*) back and enjoy a healthy, (*good, well*) -trained dog as a member of the family.

TEST 21

I. Use the correct tense-form of the verbs in brackets 1. Since the beginning of the term, Brian (*read*) three novels. Right now he (*read*) «A Farewell to Arms». He (*read*) that novel for the past three days. He (*intend*) to finish it next week. In his lifetime he (*read*) many novels, but this is the first Hemingway's novel he (*read*) ever.

2. It's noon. The mail should be here soon. It usually (*deliver*) sometime between noon and one o'clock.

3. In my opinion Kacey (*elect*) tomorrow because she (*be*) honest, knowledgeable and competent.

4. It was the first time he (*clean*) his own boots.

5. The fact that there will be only a few people attending the meeting (*not/discourage*) the organizers. That's why the meeting (*not/cancel*).

II. Use the right article.

Our first fishing trip of... summer was ... memorable affair My brother Peter and I got up at... dawn and packed our fishing equipment. ... sun was shining and ... sea was calm when we climbed into ... little motor boat tied to ... quayside We knew we wouldn't be able to go fishing again until evening high tide, so we had prepared ... picnic and taken some bottles of... drink.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition or postposition.

1. The passage is taken ... the novel 'Jane Eyre' Charlotte Bronte, which was first published ... 1847. Jane's parents were dead and she had been brought... her relatives. ... the age ... ten she was sent away ... home ... her first school.

2. The children were all upset. Some ... them were ... tears.

3. Please, try to speed ... the process. We need these documents ... delay.

4. Why don't you share the bike? You can ride it... turn.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. can/a/hope/let's/space/we/parking/find.

2. cooking/the/the/same/prepare/sauce/is/while/pasta.

3. requires/of/a/fitness/marathons/lot/running/physical.

4. Linda/pillow/rucksack/her/as/used/a.

V. Translate the Russian fragment into English.

1. Don't (*повышай*) your voice. I can hear you (*хорошо*).

2. Before you buy a boat, you ought to (*научиться*) to swim.

3. She looked (*удивленной*) when she was (*сказали*) how much the treatment would cost.

4. I'm tired of (*слушать*) to her endless complaints.

5. I've eaten only two apples. Where are (*остальные*)!

6. When I cut my hand, my mum used her scarf (*как*) a bandage to stop the bleeding.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. The ... boy ignored the teacher's request to be quiet. OBEY

2. We were received in a ..., ... furnished room. SPACE,

3. Why on earth should you put on this ... dress! COMFORT

4. I couldn't make out his.... SHAPE

5. We were ... surprised at his... to help us. SIGN GREAT, REFUSE

6. He arranged all the books ... on the shelf. NEAT

7. The police are investigating a series of bank ... in South Wales. ROB

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. I know Ann for two years.

2. What a nasty weather it is today!

3. Let's go, can we?

4. Paul has got used to live on his own.

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - No, you needn't, thank you.

2. _____ - The same to you.

TEST 22

I. Use the correct tense-form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I have a lorry trip ahead of me tomorrow, so I think I'd better go to bed. But let me say good-bye now because I (*not/see*) you in the morning. I already (*leave*) by the time you (*get*) up.
2. My grandfather never (*fly*) in an airplane, and he (*have*) no intention of ever doing so.
3. I (*study*) English here for the last two months. My English (*get*) better, but I still (*find*) it difficult to understand lectures.
4. I'm sorry I (*be*) late. I (*hold*) up by the rush hour traffic. It (*take*) me thirty minutes to get here instead of fifteen.
5. The animals that (*bring*) for the zoo (*be*) so weak from their long journey across the ocean that they could scarcely walk.

II. Use the right article.

1. When he was ... child he went to ... school which was about fifty miles away from ... home, so he stayed there ... whole term.
2. I had ... strange dream ... last night. I dreamed that I was in ... bed when suddenly I heard ... dog barking, then scratching at... front door.
3. Paul, as usual, was ... first to arrive at... party we gave ... last Saturday and ... last to leave. And for ... most of... time he just stood near ... bar drinking ... beer.
4. We spent two days in ... mountains. On one day we went hiking and on ... other we went fishing.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition or postposition.

Mrs. Laura Taylor is a person who really believes ... keeping fit. She is 45 but looks ... least 10 years younger. Now listen ... her story. 'It all started about two years ago.... those days things were very different. I was overweight. I never got any exercise. I used to stay ... home all day. I never went.....the fresh air, except to do the shopping. One day I looked ... myself ... the mirror. 'My God' I thought. 'I look terrible'. ... that time I've completely changed my life. I started jogging ... the park, doing yoga exercises ... the fitness centre and eating less meat but more vegetables. I've lost weight and feel much healthier than I used to.'

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. I/interview/how/mis/job/dress/should/for?
2. to/to/fast/still/a/me/is/mystery/she/it/how/manages/ work/so.
3. presence/ease/seemed/never/John/at/my/in.
4. funny/help/so/I/Henry/couldn't/looked/that/Aaughing.

V. Translate the Russian fragment into English.

1. In cold countries many people (*носят*) fur coats.
2. My new boots don't (*подходят*) me because I hadn't properly tried them on when I bought them.
3. If you study English (*усердно*), you will be able to get a very good (*работу*).
4. Madonna (*сделала*) her first album in 1983.
5. I'll (*сделаю*) my best but I can't promise (*ничего*).
6. You must (*научиться*) to recognize poisonous mushrooms.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. It's your own ... to check that all doors and windows are RESPONSIBLE, LOCK
2. I won't waste any more of your ... time. VALUE
3. How much ... experience do you have in working with computers? PRACTICE
4. At last we've found good quality furniture at... prices. REASON
5. Jane's ... showed in her voice. NERVE
6. This pie looks really ...! TEMPT
7. It's really ... when decent folk are afraid to leave their homes. GRACE

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. The lilac is smelling so good!
2. No sooner he had touched the pillow than he fell asleep.
3. We were received very warmly and friendly there
4. Excuse me, is there a possibility of having meal here? **VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.**
1. _____ -Rather!
2. _____ - Don't mention it.

TEST 23

I. Use the correct tense-form of the verbs in brackets.

1. The weather (*be*) terrible lately. It (*rain*) off and on for two days and the temperature (*drop*) at least ten degrees. It (*be*) only 10° above zero now. Just three days ago, the sun (*shine*) and the weather (*be*) pleasant. The weather certainly (*change*) very quickly here. I never (*know*) what to expect. Who (*know*)! When I (*wake*) up tomorrow morning, maybe it (*snow*).
2. I was supposed to take a test yesterday, but I (*not/admit*) into the testing room because the exam already (*begin*).
3. When Chris (*lose*) her job she (*get*) very depressed, so we all (*try*) to cheer her up.
4. All the roads to the north (*block*) by snow that's why we (*can/not*) reach the place at the appointed time.

II. Use the right article.

1. In many countries, you need ... business card if you want to make ... good impression. To ... foreigner, it makes it easier to understand your name and ... job you do. Make sure you include your name, ... name of ... company you

work for, and ... position you hold.

2. There was ... earthquake in my hometown last year. It was just... small one, but I could feel... ground shaking.

3. He lent me ... thousand pounds, which was exactly .. amount I needed to solve my problem.

III Fill in a suitable preposition or postposition.

1' frenchmen call it 'La Manche' but... the English, it is the English Channel, one ... the world's most extraordinary pieces ... water. ... centuries the Channel has been Britain's defence ... invaders. It has also been the only way ... - the Continent, a highway crowded ... ships.

2. Keep away ... Paul; he is ... a really bad mood this morning.

3. Although their marriage was not a happy one, they decided to stay together ... the sake ... their children.

4. Mary said ... me that she didn't want to be dependent ... her parents... another three years.

5. ... then nobody has ever known the reason ... his disappearance.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. coffee/be/of/a/welcome/cup/would/very.

2. London/brilliant/severaythey/performances/in/gave.

3. private/speak/to/can/you/I/in?

4. dark/of/Luke/bed/is/going/afraid/to/in/the.

V. Translate the Russian fragment into English.

1. We had (*такое*) a pleasant time!

2. (*Есть*) is something I want to ask you about. (*Это*) is very important.

3. (*Или*) you know the answer (*или*) you don't. Make up your mind.

4. He spent (*так много*) money on the house that (*в конце концов*) he went bankrupt.

5. She couldn't remember where she had (*оставила*) her umbrella.

6. At first Ann found her new school quite strange, but she gradually (*привыкает*) to it.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. Many ... are still ... about the value of this ... programme. SCIENCE, SCEPTIC, SEARCH

2. Students soon get ... if you criticize them too often. COURAGE

3. Peter spoke so ... that we could ... hear him. QUIET, HARD

4. Bill says that... Latin or Ancient... is a waste of time. LEARN, GREECE

5.1 think that men drive more ... than women. AGGRESSION

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. How cloudy sky is!

2. You'd better not to go there alone.

3. Is it any time left?

4. No sooner had I got into the bath when the telephone rang.

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Are you?

2. _____ - Yes, sure.

TEST 24

I. Use the correct tense-form of the verbs in brackets.

1. - Yesterday I (*have*) a terrible day. -What (*happen*)!

- First I (*fail*) a test, or at least I think I did. Then I (*drop*) my books while I (*walk*) across the campus and they (*fall*) into a mud puddle. And finally my bike (*steal*).

- Oh, poor you!

2. Tom (*want*) to be a lawyer when he (*grow*) up.

3 Yesterday at a cafe, I (*see*) Judy, an old friend of mine.

At first, I (*not/recognize*) her because she (*lose*) at least

fifty pounds. 4. What? He got married again? At this rate, he (*have*) a dozen wives by the time he (*die*).

II. Use the right article.

1. As soon as I left Deal, I saw ... low flat cloud, iron-grey and then blue, across... Channel. ... closer I got to ... Dover,... more clearly it was defined. I walked on and saw it was ... series of headlands. It was ... France.

2. ... question was difficult. None of ... pupils knew ... answer.

3. ... village has changed beyond ... recognition since we were there last.

4. I'm very pleased to announce ... name of... winner.

5. ... bank offered us ... loan on ... very favourable terms.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition or postposition.

1. During an attack ... flue, the patient should sleep as much as possible. He should go ... bed ... the first signs ... fever. It's important to protect the body ... cold and ... this reason the patient should stay ... bed. But there must be fresh air ... the bedroom. Patients need oxygen, and air flowing ... one closed room ... another is not a substitute.

2. Parkgate School, Cheshire was grounded ... 1894 ... Dr. Henry Proctor and was amongst the first... a series ... new schools which had a considerable influence ... England and the Continent. The aim was to provide boys ... a wider and more balanced education than had been customary. ... that time it was not accustomed ... admitting girls.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. street/ of/is/a/the/there/book/on/other/store/side/the.

2. room/another/bag/you/have/do/book/your/in/for/enough?
3. situation/house/in/advise/present/the/wouldn't/you/I/sell to/your.
4. change/why/relax/a/don't/for/you?

V. Translate the Russian fragment into English.

1. The papers were (*лежали*) on the table waiting to be signed.
2. (*Ни один из его друзей*) phoned him anymore.
3. Let's find a bench (*в тени*).
4. The kids (*сделали*) a terrible mess in their room.
5. I can (*едва ли*) taste (*что*) I'm eating because of my cold,
6. Will there be anyone (*еще*) we know at the party (*кроме*) Will and Kacey?
7. These tablets may (*сделать*) you feel drowsy, so you (*нельзя*) drive.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. The jury found him ... of murder. GUILT
2. He laughed ... and embraced his brother. HEART
3. Don't take it.... She is rude to everyone. PERSON
4. Ingrid has such a ... smile. ARM
5. My son is ... asking me for money! CONTINUE
6. There followed an ... silence. COMFORT
7. The ... of tonsils is not a very ... operation nowadays. REMOVE, COMPLICATE

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. She likes walking under the rain.
2. Where are the others photos?
3. Your clothes is so dirty. You'd better change it.
4. She had been waiting in the cold so long that her feet were feeling numb.

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Not at all.
2. _____ - Yes, please.

TEST 25

I. Use the correct tense-form of the verbs in brackets.

1. It (*rain*) hard yesterday morning, but by the time I was to leave home, the rain (*stop*).
2. Wake up! You (*sleep*) long enough. It (*be*) time to get up.
3. I (*write*) to Diana last week but she (*not/answer*) my letter yet. I still (*wait*) for a reply.
4. Jean said she (*not/can*) afford that ring, as it (*cost*) too much.
5. San Francisco (*lie*) to the north of Los Angeles.
6. Since my classes (*begin*) I (*not/have*) much free time. I (*have*) several big tests to study for lately.
7. The mayor (*speak*) positively about the project that (*make*) by our team.

II. Use the right article.

When was ... last time you had ... holiday? And did you organize ... trip or did you take ... package tour? These days ... most people choose ... package tour especially if they go abroad on ... holiday. But in ... past it was very difficult. In ... fact, before ... middle of... nineteenth century, travelling for ... pleasure was rare and expensive, and only ... few rich people could afford it. ... man who changed all this and brought in ... age of ... mass tourism was Thomas Cook.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition or adverb.

The population ... Oxford is about 115,000,... whom approximately 14,400 are university students. The University consists ... 36 independent colleges. The colleges choose their own students and provide them ... tutors (known as 'dons' ... the Latin *dominus*). The basis of tuition is the. tutorial, ... which students meet... their tutor once or twice a week. ... every tutorial a student will prepare a written essay ... which this or that problem must be argued. THE system ... Oxford education relies ... strong motivation and encourages independent thought and work.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. Japanese/wa^ay/after/rums/the/in/the/economy.
2. best/and/all/do/can/is/we/hope/wait/the/for.
3. tonight's/going/concert/you/are/record/to?
4. contract/signing/must/detail/he/the/in/study/before/it.

V. Translate the Russian fragment into English.

1. The rain was (*такой*) heavy that it (*сделал*) our picnic impossible.
2. She's (*единственный*) person (*кто*) understands me.
3. Where's the money I have (*дал взаймы*) you?
4. That's the best film that's ever been (*сделан*) on this subject.
5. He tore up my photo, (*что*) upset me greatly.
6. She's warned me that the box (*пахнет*) faintly of fish.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. Ann read the letter with a ... expression on her face. PUZZLE
2. You will find science lessons active and ____ VARY
3. You will work in small groups and be taught how to use the..... EQUIP, SAFE
4. The Art Department at our school aims at... the interests and skills of all pupils, to the best of their DEVELOP ABLE
5. She walked with ... ease after the RELATE, OPERATE
6. Whether you stay or leave is a matter of total... to me. DIFFER

VII- Spot the errors and correct them.

I Have we got enough of bread?

- 2.1 stayed in bed all day instead of go to work.
3. Were you at the meeting on last Monday morning?
4. In the past week I worked extremely hardly.

VIII- Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Me, too.
2. _____ - That's all right.

TEST 26

I. Use the correct tense-form of the verbs in brackets.

1. It was a nice example of team work. While I (*paint*) in the sweat of my face, Ricky (*sit*) in an armchair giving directions - until Jane (*come*) in and the roles (*reverse*).
2. We (*not/deliver*) you any further goods until your debts (*pay*).
3. Mr. Davis! It (*be*) the third time I (*try*) to get you on the phone this morning. Where you (*be*)!
4. 'Everyone (*know*) what a large proportion of British cars (*produce*) in the Midlands but not everyone (*realize*) what a difficult time the industry (*go*) through at the moment', the manager said.
5. Her face was red as she (*forget*) the sun cream.

II. Use the right article.

Peter ... Great started building St.Petersburg in 1703. He imported ... Italian architects to make its buildings bigger and better than anywhere else in ... Europe.... grandiose and colourful architecture with its surprising blues, greens and pinks, would look tasteless in more southern climates, but here ... colours go beautifully with ... snow and ... pale winter light.

III. Fill in the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. Last year we went... a package tour. Everything was organized ... us: the flight, the hotels and the entertainments. It was all included ... the price.
2. Drunkenness is responsible ... many road accidents.
3. I suppose his early age must be taken ... consideration
4. We had to come back early ... holiday because we had run.....money.
5. I'm really not used ... being treated like that!
6. As you see, we were not to blame ... the delay ... your flight taking.....Gatwick. The delay was due circumstances.....our control.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. desperate/took/along/I/so/that/I/was/that/the/job/first/ came.
2. most/even/reasons/what/wouldn't/him/to/annoyed/was/ that/she/his/listen.
3. advance/you/reserve/do/have/tickets/in/to?
4. apple/me/would/for/to/you/peel/like/me/you?

V. Translate the Russian fragment into English.

1. She went running (*уз*) the room.
2. I didn't enjoy the party, because I was (*скучала*).
3. (*За обедом*) they kept silent.
4. Do you have enough money (*при себе*) to pay for the meal? 5. I can buy some food (*после работы*).
6. I'll be (*скучать по тебе*).
7. This is very nice material. It feels (*как*) silk.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. ... a second-hand car is a ... business. BUY, RISK
2. The front row is.....for the family of the bride. FULL, RESERVE
3. Eric has a ... interest in ... cuisine. LIVE, EAST
4. Simple ... measures will reduce the risk of... PREVENT, INFECT
5. I can ... afford to rent a house on my ... income HARD. MISERY
6. His arguments sounded very PERSUADE

VII- Spot the errors and correct them.

1. I very like going to parties.
2. I didn't let him to know what I was thinking about.
3. Why not to invite them to the party?

4. Could you explain me the way of doing this?

VIII- Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Not in the least.
2. _____ - Nor have I.

TEST 27

1. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1.1 (*go*) to Bristol tomorrow to visit my aunt. I already (*book*) a seat on the train. It (*leave*) Manchester at 10.
2. It was the first time he (*participate*) in the tournament.
- 3.1 (*travel*) round Europe by tram when I first (*meet*) Cristian.
4. The baby-sitter (*tell*) the children that after they (*choose*) the story they (*want*), she (*read*) it to them.
5. Since 1782, the bald eagle, which (*signify*) power and courage, (*be*) the national emblem of the United States.
6. By the time we (*get*) to the auction the painting (*sell*).

II. Use the right article.

1. When I leave ... school. I want to go to ... university to study ... natural history. I'm very fond of ... animals, and I would like to study them in their natural surroundings.
2. ... coffee contains more caffeine than ... tea.
3. He took ... great deal of trouble to make ... party success.
4. I can't give you ... decision immediately. I've got few things to do before I can look at... project.
5. ... accidents are generally caused by ... people driving too fast. This is certainly true of... accident I had last year.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition or postposition.

1. I sat uneasily ... the edge ... the chair, while she poured tea ... the cups.
2. We are sick and tired ... listening ... her excuses.
3. The building was badly damaged ... the fire.
4. Thousands... people are living... misery... the earthquake.
5. He promised to pick me.....the station, but he didn't. That's the second time he has let me ... this week.
6. If you are not satisfied ... the service ... this hotel, you should complain ... the manager.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. him/times/leaving/off/I/thousands/have/a/turn/to/told/ light/before/the.
2. destroyed/century/fire/the/in/London/much/was/by/ seventeenth/the.
3. heard/then/he/been/since/has/from?
4. doctor/letters/grateful/the/received/of/the/from/has/ hundreds/parents.

V. Translate the Russian fragments into English.

1. If a story is (*волнующая*), you are (*взволнован*) when you read it.
2. She did nothing (*кроме*) complain the whole time she was here.
3. Where (*еще*) did you go (*кроме*) Rome?
4. If her nose were (*немного*) shorter she would be (*довольно*) prettv.
- 5 What time did Jim say he would (*придет*) ? 6 (*В конце концов*) I got the job I wanted. 7.1 have (*нет*) wish to change my decision.

yi. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. ... theory isn t easy to understand. RELATE
2. He wasn't ... a stranger - I had met him once before. EXACT
3. You ought to get some antibiotics for that ear ... INFECT
4. Please, state your name, address and OCCUPY
5. I'm sure I wouldn't have the ... to sit sewing all day. PATIENT
6. Her illness was caused ... by the worry and stress. MAIN
7. ... of consumer goods has increased ... the worldPRODUCE, THROUGH, LATE

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. Nick was late for two hours yesterday.
2. None of his parents realized the danger.
3. It is no time to lose.
4. As soon as I'll get home I'll have a shower.

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Neither would I.
2. _____ - No, I don't.

TEST 28

1. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1.1 (*not/teach*) this month. I (*work*) on a special project.
2. Although Vito (*be*) here for a long time, he never (*forget*) the beauty and traditions of his homeland.
3. Unfortunately, the brothers (*move*) the furniture in an uncovered truck when it (*start*) to rain.
4. John thinks that he (*lose*) his history book last Tuesday when he (*stop*) at the gymnasium on his way home.
5. The music for the opera which (*perform*) next month (*write*) by one of the students in the music department

6. In what country he (*tell*) you he (*live*) before he (*come*) to the United States?

II. Use the right article.

My father always enjoyed working late claiming he could get ... better work done without the usual bustle (*eyera*) to distract him. However, while working in ... Japan he found this practice impossible. He was in ... charge of... large office, and because of ... Japanese respect for hierarchy (*иерархия*) none of... staff would leave before he did. Finally ... good idea hit him. One afternoon at five, he put on his coat, said his good-byes in ... loud voice and took ... leisurely stroll around ... block. When he returned to ... office it was empty.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition or postposition.

1. He was the sort... person who immediately made you feel ... ease.
2. Brazil is rich ... mineral resources.
3. I told her ... her face exactly what I thought... her.
4. Bob can't concentrate ... anything these days. He must be ... love again.
5. We insist... the highest standards ... cleanliness... the hotel.
6. He may seem tough and cruel, but ... heart he's kind and generous.
7. Jane takes ... her mother. ... fact they look very similar ... each other.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. confidence/Alex's/is/that/real/he/lacks/problem.
2. so/me/it/angry/children/see/that/to/being/makes/treated/ like.
3. coffee/I/shall/you/make/a/of/cup?
4. is/n nowadays/the/of/growing/taking/number/people/jobs/ part-time.

V. Translate the Russian fragments into English.

1. I was working (*в качестве*) a waiter in the summer and the boss made us work (*как*) slaves.
2. There was (*такая*) a big queue outside the cinema that we couldn't get in to see the film.
3. You look so (*обеспокоенным*). What's troubling you?
4. Kate didn't feel like joining us (*тоже*).
5. I wonder (*кто из вас*) has got the (*меньше всего*) mistakes.
6. I'm sorry to say but Hayden did very (*плохо*) in his History exam.

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. You may experience some ... for a few days after the operation. COMFORT
2. I need an ... opinion from someone who is not involved. OBJECT
3. She was found alive but.... CONSCIOUS
4. As a 'comprehensive' school we strive to create a ... environment with high ... standards where everyone feels... and CARE, ACADEMY, COMFORT STIMULATE
5. We were ... impressed by the ... tour. EXTREME, GUIDE

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. He hardly ever at home.
2. You never panic like that, are you?
3. She's kept us waiting for such long time.
4. What else books by this author have you read?

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Sorry, I can't.
2. _____ - Of course, you may.

TEST 29

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. People in Britain (*come*) of age at 18, when they (*be*) officially adults.
2. Yesterday morning the postman (*complain*) that my dog recently (*try*) to bite him.
3. I (*take*) some of my pupils to Oxford tomorrow on a sightseeing tour.
- Really? It (*be*) possible for my daughter to join the party? It always (*be*) a dream of hers to see Oxford with her own eyes.
4. We (*tell*) to enter the room very quietly because the patient who just (*operate*) on might be sleeping.
5. My brakes (*not/test*) yet when I (*come*) to pick up my car; in fact, the brakes (*test*) as I (*walk*) into the service station.

II. Use the right article.

... ambitious farmer, unhappy about... yield of his crops, heard of... highly recommended new com seed. He bought some and produced ... crop that was so abundant that his astonished neighbours came and asked him to sell them some of... new seed. But... farmer, afraid that he would lose ... profitable competitive advantage, refused to sell ... seed to neighbours. ... second year ... seed did not produce quite so good ... crop, and when ... third-year crop was still worse, it suddenly dawned on ... farmer that his prize corn was being pollinated (*опылять*) by ... inferior grade of com from his neighbours' fields.

III. Fill in a suitable preposition.

1. I'm writing ... you with reference ... your advertisement ... a computer programmer, which appeared ... the Daily Telegraph yesterday. I'm very interested ... the possibility ... working... your company and am therefore enclosing

my Curriculum Vitae.

2. David has a back injury that may prevent him ... playing ... tomorrow's game.

3. You can count... Jane - she always keeps her promises.

4. I was ashamed ... having lied ... my mother.

5. I'm sorry I haven't been ... much help ... you.

6. Please help yourself ... more: there's plenty ... everything.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. really/again/I/guilty/birthday/feel/her/about/forgetting.

2. open/public/how/is/castle/the/often/the/to?

3. team/Mayor/courage/the/rescue/praised/the/for/their.

4. face/Alice/expression/her/a/the/read/letter/with/on/ puzzled.

V. Translate the Russian fragments into English.

1. Try to (*сделать*) your best to finish the work in time. 2. I need to (*взять взаймы*) your bicycle for a moment.

Can you tell me (*какой*) is yours?

- (*Мой*) is the black one over there. 3. These apples are (*гораздо*) sweeter than (*остальные*).

4. In his long career (*в качестве*) an actor, he's always wanted to appear (*как*) Hamlet, but he's never wanted to be (*как*) him in real life.

5. (*Пока*) I was waiting I read a magazine.

6. Do you think the coat (*сидит*) me well?

VI. Complete the sentences using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. If you leave your things ... around, you shouldn't be ... if you lose them. LIE. SURPRISE

2. His life changed ... when he moved to Denmark. COMPLETE

3. I'm afraid I am really ... for time at the moment. PRESS

4. I wandered around the city centre to kill time before my APPOINT

5. I had been staring at the computer screen all evening when a ... suddenly struck me. SOLVE

6. It's ... the architecture which gives the place its PART. PERSON

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. I'm sorry I forgot my day-book at home.

2. What does winter like in your country?

3. Bob offered giving us a lift.

4. It was a meeting whose importance I didn't realize at that time.

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Not at all.

2. _____ - Not in the least.

TEST 30

I. Use the correct tense-forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. Microwave ovens (*make*) cooking fast and easy. If you (*buy*) a microwave you (*be able*) to cook frozen dinner in five minutes.

2. When I (*arrive*) home last night, I (*discover*) that I (*forget*) my key. My roommate (*be*) asleep, but I (*have*) to wake him up by knocking loudly on the door.

3. By the time the rainy weather (*begin*) Mr. Check and his son Brian (*build*) a new roof on their house.

4. Right now Max (*be*) in hospital. He (*treat*) for a bad burn on his hand and arm.

5. I just (*move*) into a new apartment. I (*not/meet*) any of my neighbours yet.

6. What percentage of the people in the world (*be*) illiterate?

7. The baby-sitter for whose care Mrs. Pelt's children (*leave*), (*fall*) asleep while she (*read*) the children a story.

II. Use the right article.

Twice ... week ... Belgian riding ... bicycle crossed ... German border and he always carried ... suitcase filled with ... sand. Each time ... customs officials searched ... suitcase, they never found anything illegal. Sometimes they even emptied out all ... sand, expecting to find ... jewellery, ... watches or ... drugs. But always there was nothing but sand. They couldn't think what ... Belgian was smuggling. It was many years later, long after ... Belgian had vanished from ... scene, that they learnt... truth. He had been smuggling ... bicycles.

III. Fill in the suitable preposition or postposition.

1. The construction ... this supermarket will be completed ... half a year.

2. Julia spends far too much money ... those spoilt kids ,, hers

3. This is the only copy ... the book ... existence: all the others were destroyed by the fire.

4. It was raining when we arrived ... the coast, but ...mid day the rain had suddenly stopped.

5. Never put.....tomorrow what you can do today.

6. If I was walking ... the forest and suddenly came face ... face ... a bear, I'd quickly climb ... the nearest tree if there was one.

IV. Put the words in the right order to make up a sentence.

1. can't/code/unless/you/the/open/know/you/door/the.

2. wedding/you/date/have/the/your/on/decided/of/yet?

3. fast/was/to/it/drive/of/foulsh/you/so.

4. fear/of/eyes/boy Vfull/confusion/and/the/were.

V. Translate the Russian fragments into English.

1. It's the (*самый смешной*) film I've ever seen.
2. One man's meat is (*другого*) man's poison.
3. (*Каждая*) country has (*свои*) customs.
4. The last drop (*делает*) the cup run over.
5. She's (*сказала*) me that she applies this ointment (*через день*).
6. You have seen too (*много*) horror films (*недавно*).

VI. Complete the sentence using the appropriate derivatives of the words in capitals.

1. We couldn't ride because the road was being WIDE
2. We all have to do some ... before the exam. REVISE
3. Lying on a ... beach with an ... dip in clear blue water, can be one of the most ... ways of spending a holiday. SAND. OCCASION. RELAX
4. According to the ... figures during the past years, the most popular ... for the British people was 35 million people ... walked two miles or more. LATE, ACTIVE. WALK, REGULAR

VII. Spot the errors and correct them.

1. I don't want nothing else to eat.
2. I'd like you join us.
3. Does the scarf cost as many as the kerchief?
4. The police has already been called, hasn't it?

VIII. Supply an appropriate stimulus-utterance.

1. _____ - Not yet.
2. _____ - Are you?

2. INTEGRATED TESTS

In these tests you will complete the sentences in each passage by choosing a word form or structure from the variants given A) in brackets; B) after the text.

A.

1. (*Many, Much*) people now (*think, are thinking*) that (*the, -*) teachers give pupils too (*many, much*) homework. They (*say, tell*) that (*it, there*) is unnecessary for children to work at (*home, house*) in their (*free, vacant*) time. (*Moreover, However*) they argue that (*most, the most*) teachers do not (*proper, properly*) plan the homework tasks they give to pupils. The result is that pupils (*must, have*) to repeat tasks (*what, which*) they (*had already, have already*) done (*at, in*) school. (*Recently, Nowadays*) in Greece many parents complained (*about, for*) the difficult homework which teachers gave to their children. (*-, the*) parents said that most of the homework was a (*spending, waste*) of time, and they wanted to (*stop, halt*) it. Spain and Turkey are two countries which (*stopped ended*) giving homework recently. (*In, At*) Denmark, West Germany and several (*another, other*) countries in Europe teachers (*cannot, aren't able to*) set homework at weekends. In Holland, teachers (*allow, let*) pupils to (*stay, settle*) at school to (*do, make*) their homework. The children are (*free, independent*) to help (*one another, themselves*). (*Similar, Alike*) arrangements (*also, too*) exist in some (*Britain, British*) schools.
2. Oxford is the most popular tourist attraction (*in, at*) Britain after London and Stratford-upon-Avon. Oxford is famous (*by for*) its university (*what, which*) is (*the, a*) oldest in Britain and the third oldest in Europe. The University had thirty-five (*separate, apart*) colleges. For (*many, plenty*) years, only five of (*this, these*) colleges were for women. (*However, Anyway*) since 1979 (*near, nearly*) all the colleges have (*accepted, received*) both men and women. Oxford is (*not, no*) only a university city, it is also a (*market, bazaar*) town where (*ordinary, usual*) people live and work. With over one million visitors (*a, the*) year, it is very difficult for the (*residents, residence*) of Oxford to live their (*day, daily*) life. Sometimes they (*feel, are feeling*) that the city (*does, do*) not belong (*-, to*) them.
3. Because Britain is quite (*a, the*) small island, (*no one, neither*) lives (*farther, further*) than 75 miles (*from, of*) the sea. As soon as summer (*comes, will come*) thousands (*people, of people*) in cars (*make, do*) their way to the sea. (*Many, Much*) parents (*is, are*) willing to (*sit, seat*) (*on, in*) crowded beaches, in (*traffic, transport*) jams and sometimes (*in, on*) bad weather to give (*their, theirs*) children a seaside holiday.
4. Well, here I am in England. I (*have arrived, arrived*) at Dover a week ago and I'm just beginning to settle (*down, up*)- (*The, --*) journey was (*awful, awfully*)! We had (*to land, land*) at Antigue because of a storm (*so, as*) the (*journey, travel*) took more (*than, as*) thirteen (*hours, clocks*)! The (*house, home*) is very nice. It's (*more big, bigger*) than (*our, ours*) in St. George. Mr and Mrs Wilson both go to (*work, job*). Mrs Wilson (*works, is working*) in a department store (*what, which*) is in (*the, -*) centre of Dover. She is very kind and wants me (*to have, have*) a (*good, well*) time in England. They are taking me (*somewhere, anywhere*) special this weekend. I hope it's London! Mr Wilson (*owes, owns*) a video rental shop. Dover is a bit (*bored, boring*). It's (*full, filled*) of tourists because it's (*where, were*) people (*take, bring*) the ferry (*to, in*) France. (*They, There*) are quite (*a few, a little*) beaches down the (*coast, bank*) but they (*aren't, don't*) like the beaches in Grenada and (*-, the*) water here is much (*more cold, colder*)\.
5. (*A, The*) day before yesterday I went for an interview with a film (*company, campaign*). (*A, The*) job sounded (*interested, interesting*) and (*there, it*) wasn't (*bad, badly*) paid (*too, either*). I was (*terrible, terribly*) nervous. I (*dressed, wore*) my brown velvet suit (*even, ever*) though my black boots didn't (*go, suit*) with it very (*good, well*). I

even decided (*to spend, waste*) some money and (*went, came*) to (*the, -*) hairdresser's.

The interview was (*in, on*) a (*large, big*) building near Piccadilly. I (*talked, told*) to (*a, the*) head of the publicity department. It was (*quite, quiet*) an informal interview and very (*pleasant, pleasantly*). The boss kept (*say, saying*) they (*want, wanted*) someone really (*neat, neatly*) and efficient (*as, so*) the publicity department was very (*big, great*) and very important.

6. I have been (*waiting, waited*) a long time for January and (*it's, its*) frosts (*to begin, begin*). And they are here at (*last least*)! Now, thanks heavens, I (*can, will be able*) to curl up in front of (*a, the*) fire and (*relax, recreate*). I'll (*look, see*) out of the window at the beautiful frost (*covered, covering*) every (*blade, blades*) of grass on (*my, mine*) precious lawn, and I'll think with (*great, large*) satisfaction that (*it, there*) is absolutely nothing I (*can, need*) work at in the garden till the frost (*will lift, lifts*). Don't misunderstand me. I love my garden. I'm (*English, the English*) after (*all, everything*). (*Since, For*) years I (*have, was*) lived gardenless (*in, on*) a London flat but I (*have longed, longed*) for a garden so (*many, much*)! Now that I've got (*one, the one*) I (*adore, have adored*) it!

7. Dear Helen,

Thank you very much for your letter and news (*from, out of*) Cornwall. I'm (*no, not*) very brown (*yet, still*) (*and, but*) I (*am having, have been having*) a marvellous holiday. We've (*got, get*) a boat (*called, calling*) 'Julliette'; (*it, there*) is a small motor cruiser.

So far, we (*had travelled, have travelled*) more than forty miles already.

Yesterday we (*have visited, visited*) Norwich Cathedral, (*what, which*) is (*near, nearly*) a thousand (*year, years*) old! We bought some (*food, meal*) in the big market (*to, for*) take back to (*a, the*) boat and then (*visited, attended*) the famous Old Barge Inn, which (*is, was*) built in the 14th century. I (*write, am writing*) to you on (*board, the board*) 'Julliette'. Peter and John (*fish, are fishing*), (*but, and*) they (*hadn't, haven't*) caught (*nothing, anything*) yet! I hope to see you when I (*I'll get, get*) back (*next, the next*) week.

Love, David

8. What are you doing (*at, in*) the moment? Perhaps you (*draw, are drawing*) (*in, with*) a pencil! Perhaps you (*try, are trying*) to open (*a, the*) bottle (*of, with*) beer. Or perhaps you are (*simple, simply*) reading this (*passage, novel*), but soon you will have (*to turn, turn*) to (*next, the next*) page. In all (*this, these*) actions you are using (*your, yours*) hands. (*A, -*) hand is a marvellous machine. It is one of (*most, the most*) precious (*parts, particles*) of your body. It can (*to work, work*) quickly and it (*rare, rarely*) gets (*tired, tiring*). It (*controlled, /л controlled*) by one of the biggest (*part, parts*) of your (*brain, mind*), and when you (*move, are moved*) (*a, the*) finger (*hundred, hundreds*) of messages come (*from, out of*) the brain to help you.

(*In, At*) the end of your fingers (*there, they*) are thousands of (*nerves, nervous*). They (*make, do*) a (*fascinated, fascinating*) job. They (*say, tell*) you when a cup of (*tea, the tea*) is too hot, for example. And try to play (*the, a*) guitar or (*a, the*) piano without your hands.

But if you (*is, are*) a criminal, you might want (*to forget, forgetting*) them. If your fingerprints are (*found, looked for*) you (*will not, don't*) escape- (*because, that's why*) unfortunately, your fingerprints are (*unique, unusual*).

9. We had a (*frightened, frightening*) experience a month ago. One evening we were in the lounge as (*usual, usually*). We (*watched, were watching*) television when we suddenly heard a noise in the dining-room at the back (*of, off*) the house. The room in (*which, that*) we were sitting was at the front (*of, from*) the house. We (*ran, raced*) into the dining-room and (*found, founded*) everything (*on, in*) the floor - someone had (*done, made*) a terrible (*mess, message*). But, by (*the time, time*) we got (*there, here*) the burglar (*had gone, went*). If he hadn't dropped a large silver dish (*on, to*) the glass table, we (*won't, wouldn't*) have heard (*nothing, anything*). Fortunately, he didn't (*have, take*) time to steal (*much, many*). Mr. Legge (*that, who*) lives (*next, the next*) door, saw the burglar (*to run, running*) away and gave a (*good, well*) description (*-, to*) the police.

10. I (*got, stood*) up (*at, in*) half past eight. I (*dressed, put on*) but didn't wash because I was (*late, lately*). I (*hadn't, didn't have*) my breakfast (*too, either*), but (*took, was taking*) a sandwich (*to, for*) eat on the (*way, road*) to school. Normally I walk (*at, to*) school, but the bus (*came, went*), so I got (*on, in*) it. I (*was, had been*) in school at ten to nine - ten minutes (*early, earlier*).

When the English class started, the teacher (*said, told*), «Where's your (*homework, housework*), Susan?» and I thought, «Oh, dear! My English homework (*is, has been*) on the kitchen table at (*home, house*)». (*That, There*) was (*the, a*) start of (*the, a*) terrible day.

11. I had (*to go, go*) to hospital two years (*ago, before*) because I had (*a, -*) stomachache. (*It, There*) was actually (*rather, more*) serious (*so, as*) I had to (*stand, stay*) in hospital (*for, since*) two weeks.

I liked the hospital. (*Thie, -*) food was (*good, well*) (*although, despite*) we had to get (*up, down*) at seven (*hour, o'clock*) (*for, to*) breakfast, and the (*nurses, sisters*) were great. (*Each, Any*) bed had a special radio, (*that, which*) I liked. The beds weren't very (*comfortable, convenient*) though, and (*it, there*) was difficult to (*sleep, slip*). (*The, -*) kids were nice (*and, but*) I was (*homesick, airsick*) and I (*missed, longed*) my family. I was really (*excited, exciting*) to (*see, look*) our dog Snowy and our cat Bert when I (*got, was getting*) home. The medicine they gave me was (*disgusted, disgusting*) - it tasted (*like, as*) poison - but I (*had, ought*) to drink it because it stopped me feeling (*awful, awfully*). They (*found out, learned*) that some fish I ate had (*done, made*) me ill, so I never (*eat, have eaten*) fish now. That's (*a, the*) good thing too, because I (*like, dislike*) fish.

12. One of my (*great, large*) ambitions is to (*study, learn*) how to pilot a balloon on (*my, mine*) own. My father (*who, which*) is (*a, the*) balloonist, (*takes, brings*) us all ballooning with him (*every, all*) weekend. I'm (*the only, only*) one who (*rides, drives*) with him (*in, on*) the basket. The basket is (*fastening, fastened*) to the bottom of the

balloon (*with, by*) nylon ropes.

Sometimes I (*pilot, am piloting*) the balloon on my own when (*a, the*) wind isn't (*too, rather*) strong and (*it, there*) is in the right (*direction, way*). But Dad always (*stays, leaves*) with me in the basket.

13. Gorillas are (*the, -*) largest of all the animals. A (*male, mail*) gorilla can be 180cm (*tall, high*) and (*weigh, weight*) 200 kg. Gorillas are very strong (*and, but*) they don't often (*fight, struggle*). (*In, on*) fact (*there, they*) are (*peaceful, quietly*) animals. Gorillas (*live, leave*) in small family groups of (*about, around*) fifteen. In a group (*there, it*) is one strong (*older, elder*) male, some young males and (*a few, few*) females with (*their, its*) babies.

14. Robert Burns loved common (*people, peoples*) and (*wrote, had written*) about them. (*Once, One*) day when he (*had walked, was walking*) near the docks, he (*heard, had heard*) a cry for help. He ran towards (*-, the*) water. Just then (*a, the*) sailor jumped (*of, off*) a boat that (*had stood, stood*) near the dock, (*began, had begun*) to swim towards (*a, the*) man (*who, which*) (*was called, was calling*) for help and saved him.

The man who (*was saved, saved*) was (*a, the*) rich merchant He (*thanked, had thanked*) the brave sailor and gave him (*a the*) shilling. (*-, The*) people who (*was, were*) watching the scene protested (*loud, loudly*) when (*the, a*) rich man (*gave had given*) him only (*a, the*) shilling. (*But, And*) Burns stopped them and (*said, told*), «Let him (*alone, lonely*). (*A, The*) gentleman is, of course, (*a, the*) best judge of what his life is (*worth, cost*)».

15. (*Have, Had*) you ever heard an Englishman (*say, to say*) 'touch wood' and then put his (*hand, arm*) on the (*nearest, next*) thing to him (*that, what*) is (*done, made*) of wood? It is the English version of an old superstitious (*habitual, habit*) known in (*various, variety*) ways in (*the, a*) number of countries.

When a man (*on, in*) ancient (*time, times*) had (*said, told*) something (*boasting, boastful*) or optimistic, he always touched (*a, the*) sacred (*object, subject*) in order to protect (*him, himself*) against Divine punishment for his arrogance. (*At, In*) Christian times the wood (*what, which*) he (*was touched, touched*) represented the wood of the Cross. In America (*however, although*) they (*say, tell*) instead «knock on wood».

16. William and Brian (*were playing, had played*) tennis yesterday when it (*started, starts*) to rain. Brian went (*home, to home*) but William was very (*bored, boring*). He (*decides, decided*) to go out in the car.

He was (*driven, driving*) along the street when he (*saw, had seen*) Jennifer, (*a, the*) friend from (*work, job*). She was (*looking, seeing*) at some clothes in a shop window when she (*heard, was hearing*) William (*to call, call*) her name. Jennifer (*got, came*) into (*a, the*) car (*next, near*) to William and they (*talked, told*) for (*a, -*) long time. They (*are, were*) still talking when (*a, the*) policeman arrived and (*spoke, told*) to William. He pointed (*on, to*) a large «No Parking» (*sign, sigh*)-William was very (*worrying, worried*). «Please, don't (*give, bring*) me a (*parked, parking*) ticket», (*hut, and*) the police-man (*who, that*) was cold and wet and hungry didn't want to (*hear, listen*) to William.

17. We are (*so, such*) pleased to hear your (*good, well*) news and we love the name you have (*chosen, chose*) - Daniel James sounds (*greatly, great*). We hope Jemma isn't too (*jealous, jealousy*) of her new brother. Is she treating him (*kind, kindly*) ?

We had intended (*come, to come*) and see you next weekend but I (*hurt, was hurting*) my back (*a few, few*) days ago and now I (*can't, couldn't*) drive very (*comfortably, conveniently*). I (*was repairing, repaired*) the garage roof when I (*was falling, fell*) off the ladder! I (*didn't, hadn't*) hurt myself (*bad, badly*), thank goodness!

Anyway, we've decided (*to have, having*) a short (*break, interval*) next month and spend it with some friends, who live (*near, nearly*) you, so (*while, until*) we (*stay, are staying*) with them, we'll come (*over, about*) and see you all. In the meantime, take care (*of, for*) yourselves, will you? We'll look forward (*seeing, to seeing*) you all again.

18. Dear Stephanie,

I'm writing (*to tell, say*) you about (*a, the*) discussion I had with my father (*last, the last*) weekend. We (*talked, said*) for several (*o'clock, hours*) and I told (*him, his*) all about the plans we've (*made, done*) for our business. At first he wasn't very (*interesting, interested*), he (*said, told*) he (*didn't think, wasn't thinking*) we were (*old enough, enough old*) to run a business. However I told him that we (*have, had*) already seen the bank manager (*which, who*) said that the plan (*seems, seemed*) realistic. (*So, Thus*) then he sat down and asked me (*to talk, to tell*) him how (*many, much*) money we'd (*must, need*) to start with, and where we (*sold, would sell*) the stuff we made and so on. Eventually he said (*to, for*) me, «OK, it's a (*well, good*) plan. (*Say, Tell*) Stephanie that I'll (*borrow, lend*) you some money to get started». (*Honest, Honestly*), I couldn't believe he (*will, would*) say it! Isn't it (*greatly, great*) ?

I'm really looking forward (*for, to*) seeing you next week so we can (*tell, talk*) to him together and get things going. All the best, Neville

B.

1. A: Are you going to the meeting tomorrow? B: Where ...(!)... going to be? A: At the home of some friends ... (2)...

. B: ... (3) ... is it going to start? A: If everyone ... (4) ... there on time, at about 8.30. B: What are we going to ... (5) ...?

A: Well, in this district a lot of parents have young children. They're not ... (6) ... school but there isn't

... (7) ... for them. B: So what can we do? A: We must find someone ... (8) ... a big garden. Then we need a teacher who likes children and can ... (9) ... B: ... (10) ... of my friends have big gardens, but I'll still come to the meeting. A: Good.

1. A is it Bit is C is there D there is

2. A to us B of us C to ours D of ours

3. A Which hour B Which time C What hour D What time

4. A will get B shall get C get D gets

5. A talk about B speak on C tell on D say about

6. A old enough to B old enough for C enough old to D enough old for
7. A somewhere other B somewhere else C *anywhere* other D anywhere else
8. A having B which has C who have D with
9. A look after it B looks after it C look after them D looks after them
10. A Not any B Nobody C Neither D None

2. Wednesday, 20 July

Dear Fred,

Thanks for your letter. It was ...(!)... from you. Your new job sounds very interesting and you ...(2)... with it. I am still with the same firm that I joined five years ago when we ...(3).....(4)... I am happy there, I must say that I sometimes feel that I ...(5)... to move, but here in Bakewell there are only ...(6)... companies.

I like this town. What I like ...(7)... living here is that it is quiet. Perhaps I should say it was quiet ...(8)... these big lorries started coming through the town. Anyway, they only come through during the day, never ...(9)... night.

If you have time before the end of the summer, why don't you come and ...(10)... with us one weekend? That would be very pleasant.

I hope you are still well. Write again soon.

Yours, Terry

1. A well to listen B well to hear C good to listen D good to hear
2. A look pleased B seem pleased C look pleasing D seem pleasing
3. A left school B left the school C have left school D have left the school
4. A Although B Already C Because D Through
5. A ought B should C would D must
6. A some B any C few D a few
7. A more about B most about C more of D most of
8. A as long as B as far as C when D until
9. A during B at the C in D at
10. A live B pass C stay D rest

A: Hello, Mr Fletcher. You look rather tired this morning.

B: I expect I do. I ...(!)... to bed until four o'clock.

3. A: ...(2)... a difficult journey back from Scotland, then?

B: Yes. The business trip was successful but the train arrived four hours late and I ... (3) ... a taxi. In the end I ...(4)... home and found my wife ...(5)... the door and she didn't hear me when I rang the bell.

A: So what ...(6)... then?

B: I thought I ...(7)... to get in by breaking the kitchen window but I cut ...(8)... hand on the glass and fell on the dustbin. My wife woke up and rang the police, thinking I was a thief. When they came, they asked me ...(9)... to the police station with them. But my wife explained what had happened. The next time I ...(10)... in London late at night I'll go to a hotel.

1. A didn't get B wasn't C haven't got D haven't been
2. A Had you B Did you have C Were you having D Have you had
3. A must take B must be taking C must have taken D had to take
4. A arrived in B arrived to C got D got to
5. A has locked B had locked C locked D was locked
6. A did you do B did you C you did D have you done
7. A must B have C will have D would have
8. A me the B myself the C my D me my
9. A that I went B that I would go C to go D for going
10. A shall arrive B will arrive C am arriving D arrive

4. Artists ...(!)... draw pictures on the pavement with chalk used to be a common sight ...(2)... different parts of London, but ...(3)... now. Sometimes the pictures are very good. This is proved by the fact that one of the ...(4)... favourite tricks is to draw a pound note and see ...(5)... try ...(6)... The police usually treat pavement artists kindly and ...(7)... in the law against drawing on the pavement ...(8)... the artists is ...(9)... he gets a large crowd around him and this prevents other people ...(10)... freely along the street.

1. A who B which C what D whose
2. A at B for C by D in
3. A there are only left a few B there are only a few left C they are only left a few D they are only a few left
4. A artists B artists' C artist's D artist
5. A the lot of people that B the amount of people what C how many people D how much people
6. A picking up it B picking it up C to pick up it D to pick it up
7. A there is nothing B there is anything C it is nothing D it is anything

8. A even B whether C if not D unless
9. A so good as B as good as C so good that D as good that
10. A that they pass
- B that they don't pass C from passing D to pass

5. Dear Juliet,

Thank you for your letter, which ...(!)... here yesterday. It is a pity the weather in Scotland was so bad; we have not had ...(!)... weather here, ...(!)... My mother says it is the ...(!)... summer she ...(!)... . While I ...(!)... along the coast road the other day, there was a terrible storm. I could not see and was afraid I ...(!)... an accident, so I stopped the car and waited ...(!)... . Some people say men drive ...(!)... than women but I don't agree. It ...(!)... me a long time to get home, but at least I arrived safely.

- i. A arrived B arrived to C has arrived D has arrived to
2. A a good B good C one good D some good
5. A also B too C either D neither
4. A more bad B most bad C worse D worst
5. A can remember B can remind C may remember D may remind
6. A drove B had driven C have driven D was driving
7. A had B had had C would have D will have
8. A for the storm passing B for the storm to pass C the storm passing D the storm to pass
9. A more careful B most careful C more carefully D most carefully
10. A has taken B took C takes D was

6. There was a nasty ...(!)... at Newton crossroads yesterday morning. A bus overturned, and ...(!)... of the passengers were badly ...(!)... . Several ...(!)... helped to pull people out of the wreckage and give them first aid ...(!)... help arrived. Soon the injured ...(!)... to the nearest hospital ...(!)... ambulance but ...(!)... so many that the casualty department there ...(!)... difficulty in treating them all. Most of the passengers ...(!)... to be suffering from severe ...(!)....

1. A event B accident C happening D emergency
2. A few B the few C some D any
3. A pained B wounded C knocked down D injured
4. A bystanders B supporters C audience D spectators
5. A while B until C unless D after
6. A were brought B took C were taken D brought
7. A with B on C in D by
8. A there was B it was C there were D it were
9. A have B had C has had D had had
10. A had been found B founded C were found D had found
11. A surprise B shock C worry D nervousness

7. I am going to the Mediterranean for my holidays next week. I ...(!)... to stay with my grandfather in the country. He is ...(!)... man and always ...(!)... cheerful but I ...(!)... be with my friends though I wouldn't like ...(!)... by ...(!)... so I'm going to Mallorca with Jane and Elizabeth. Elizabeth ...(!)... there before. She is looking forward to ...(!)... on the beach all day. Of course the weather there is ...(!)... in England. They say it is very hot there at the moment, so I hope it is ...(!)... fine when we arrive.

1. A usually go B am usually going C usually am going
2. A an old wonderful B an old and wonderful C a wonderful old
3. A looks B looks like C looks to be
4. A would better B would better to C would rather
5. A him upsetting B upsetting him C to upset him
6. A saying B telling C telling to
7. A has been B has gone C went
8. A lying B lie C lying
9. A more good than B better than C better that
10. A already B no longer C still

8. I had a bad tooth so my wife ...(!)... to the dentist. «It ...(!)... serious», she said, «but you ...(!)... make sure». At first I ...(!)... Going to the dentist's always ...(!)... something that happened when I was a child. I went to the dentist's to ...(!)... and the dentist ...(!)... was usually there was ill. I asked his assistant to give me gas ...(!)... the pain. When I woke up, he was ...(!)... my mother for having taken the wrong tooth out. I explained this to my wife. «...(!)... coward you are!» she said.

1. A said me to go B said me that I went C told me to go D told me that I went
2. A may be not B may not be C must be not D must not be
3. A had better B would better C had rather D would rather
4. A denied going B denied to go C refused going D refused to go
5. A remembers me of B remembers me to C reminds me of D reminds me to
6. A have a tooth taken out B have taken out a tooth C take a tooth out D take out a tooth
7. A what B which C who D whom

8. A for not feel B for not feeling C not to feel D so as not to feel

9. A apologizing B apologizing to C pardoning D pardoning to

10. A So B Such a C What D What a

9. A: Hello, Janet. What was the film like last night? Is it worth...(!)...? B: I wish I ...(2)... tell you, but we didn't manage to see it. A: I thought you said you ...(3)... going to the Ritz. B: I know. But ...(4)... hundreds of people outside the cinema when we got there. If we ...(5)... the film was going to be so popular. John would have booked the tickets in advance, but we didn't expect that ...(6)... A: So what ...(7)...? B: We waited outside for half an hour, but it was no good, so we ...(8)... home and watched the television. A: What a pity! That ...(9)... disappointing. B: Yes. I've told John that the next time we ...(10)... to the cinema, we'll get the tickets beforehand.

1. A see B to see C seeing D to be seen

2. A should B would C might D could

3. A are B were C have been D should be

4. A there were B there have C they were D they have been

5. A had known B would have known C knew D should have known

6. A so much people would come B so many people would come C there would come so much people D there would come so many people

7. A did you B were you doing C you did D did you do

8. A went to B were going to C went D were going

9. A should have been B ought to have been C must have been D had to be

10. A will have gone B shall go C will go D go

10. Every Thursday I have lunch with my old friend Jason, ...(1)... I have known ...(2)... we were at school together. Last Thursday, he arrived late ...(3)... was unusual because he always comes on time. I asked ...(4)... late. «I've had a bit of a shock», he said. «On my way here, a little girl ran out in front of the car ...(5)... I managed to brake in time, I can't help thinking of what would have happened if I ...(6)... killed her. I ...(7)... to my wife, ...(8)... warned me that the roads would be icy today and suggested ...(9)... by train. But I insisted ...(10)... by car.»

«Well, shocks like this are typical of ...(11)... » I said. «...(12)... the child wasn't hurt, there's no need to worry. In your position, if I ...(13)... she was all right, I'd forget about the whole thing.»

«Yes, perhaps you're right», he said. «All the same. I wish I ...(14)... my wife's advice. I had to stop for a minute because I was trembling so much that I ...(15)... go on».

1. A that B for C which D whom

2. A for B since C when D while

3. A that B this C what D which

4. A him why he was B him why was he C to him why he was D to him why was he

5. A Although B However C In spite D In spite of

6. A had B may have C should have D would have

7. A had to listen B must have listened C should have listened D would have listened

8. A that B which C who D whom

9. A me come B me to come C to me coming D I should come

10. A for coming B in coming C on coming D to come

11. A modern life B modern living C the modern life D the modern living

12. A Although B In case C So long as D Unless

13. A know B was knowing C knew D would know

14. A had taken B took C should have taken D would have taken

15. A couldn't B hadn't to C may not D might not